

汉英对照阅读系列
Chinese-English Readers series

Tales 上下五千年(六)
from Five Thousand Years
of Chinese
History (VI)



Better Link Press

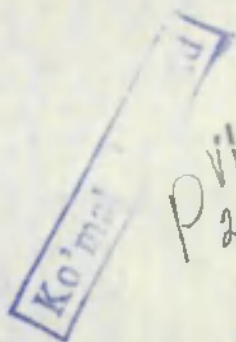
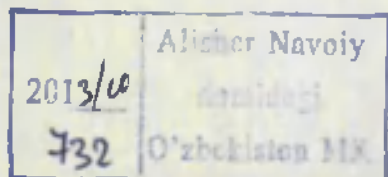
致读者	8
关于《上下五千年(六)》	10

目
录

1、鄱阳湖大战	12
2、刘伯温求雨	24
3、胡惟庸案件	32
4、燕王进南京	42
5、三保太监下西洋	54
6、于谦保卫北京	64
7、海瑞刚正不阿	76
8、戚继光驱逐倭寇	88

- To the Reader..... 9
- About the Book..... 11
-
1. Battle at Lake Poyang..... 13
2. Liu Bowen Prays for Rain..... 25
3. The Hu Weiyong Affair..... 33
4. The Prince of Yan Marches
into Nanjing..... 43
5. Sanbao the Eunuch Explores
the "Western Oceans"..... 55
6. Yu Qian Defends Beijing..... 65
7. Hai Rui, Man of Integrity
and Independence..... 77
8. Qi Jiguang Gets Rid of the *Wo Kou*..... 89

9、李时珍上山采药	96
10、张居正辅政	106
11、努尔哈赤建立后金	116
12、萨尔浒大战	124
目 13、徐光启研究西学	134
录 14、左光斗入狱	144
15、袁崇焕大战宁远	154
16、皇太极施反间计	164
17、闯王李自成	174
18、张献忠奇袭襄阳	186
19、李岩和红娘子	196
20、吴三桂借清兵	206



Pvi
23648/6

9. Li Shizhen Scours Mountains
for Medicinal Herbs.....97
10. The Tutelage of Zhang Juzheng..... 107
11. Nurhaci Founds the Later Jin..... 117
12. Battle at Sarhu..... 125
13. Xu Guangqi Studies
Western Sciences..... 135
14. Zuo Guangdou Goes to Jail..... 145
15. The Battle of Ningyuan..... 155
16. Hung Taiji Sows Disinformation..... 165
17. Li Zicheng, the Trailblazing King 175
18. Zhang Xianzhong's Stealth
Attack on Xiangyang..... 187
19. Li Yan and the Red Lady..... 197
20. Wu Sangui Borrows Qing Troops..... 207

目
录

- 21、史可法死守扬州 218
- 22、郑成功收复台湾 230
- 23、李定国转战西南 240
- 24、康熙帝平定三藩 248
- 25、雅克萨的胜利 258
- 26、三征噶尔丹 264
- 27、文字狱 274
- 28、乾隆帝禁书修书 284
- 29、曹雪芹写《红楼梦》 292
- 30、大贪官和珅 302

21. Shi Kefa's Valiant Defense of
Yangzhou..... 219
22. Zheng Chenggong Recovers Taiwan..... 231
23. Li Dingguo Campaigns
in Southwest China..... 241
24. Emperor Kangxi Subdues
the Three Feudatories..... 249
25. Victory at Yaksa (Albazin)..... 259
26. Three Expeditions against Galdan..... 265
27. Literary Inquisition..... 275
28. Emperor Qianlong's Book Bans
and Anthology Creation..... 285
29. Cao Xueqin Writes
A Dream of Red Mansions 293
30. He Shen, Corrupt Mandarin
with an Insatiable Greed..... 303

致读者

要学好一种语言，必须多听、多说、多读、多写。要学好汉语也不例外，必须多听普通话，多阅读汉语作品。

《文化中国·汉英对照阅读丛书》是一套开放的系列，收入其中的主要为当代中国作家的散文、故事、小说等。我们编辑这套汉英对照读物的目的是帮助你阅读欣赏原汁原味的当代中国文学或非文学作品，让你在学习现代汉语、提高汉语阅读水平的同时，了解中国社会、中国文化、中国历史，以及当代中国人民的生活。我们采用汉英对照的办法，是为了帮助你更好地欣赏这些作品，对照英语译文你可以知道自己是不是真正正确地理解了这些汉语原作的意思。

希望你能喜欢。

——编者

To the Reader

Acquisition of proficiency in a foreign language calls for diligent practices in listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Learning Chinese is no exception. To a student of Chinese, extensive reading exercises are as important as constant exposure to spoken Mandarin.

Cultural China: Chinese-English Readers series is an open-ended series of collections of writings in Chinese, mostly essays and short stories by contemporary Chinese writers. Our purpose in putting together this bilingual series is to help you enjoy contemporary Chinese literature and other writings in their authentic, unadulterated flavor and to understand the Chinese society, culture, history, and the contemporary life of the Chinese people as you learn the language and hone your reading skills. A bilingual text will assist you in better savoring these works and in checking your understanding of the Chinese original against the English translation.

We hope you will like this volume.

— the Editor

关于《上下五千年(六)》

《上下五千年》是一套中国历史故事读物。它按历史顺序编写，涉及的时间自远古至清代鸦片战争前。

这套书的选题计划出自教育家和语言学家林汉达先生之手。林先生拟定了这套书的写作提纲，并写了部分篇目。林先生去世后，曹余章先生续写完成了其余部分。两位先生薪尽火传写成的这部著作，以准确的史实、精心的编排、流畅的文笔、独特的风格赢得了读者的喜爱。

《上下五千年(六)》汉英对照本摘取了自明朝初年至鸦片战争前这段时期的相关故事。考虑到对照本篇幅不宜太大，我们对原书的内容作了一些删节。

About the Book

Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History is a collection of stories arranged in chronological order, covering a period from ancient times to the pre-Opium-War Qing Dynasty.

The topics were selected by educator and linguist, Lin Handa (1900 – 1972), who drew up the outline for the collection and contributed some chapters. Following Lin's death, Cao Yuzhang (1924 – 1996) took over his mantle and completed the work. This combined effort of two consecutive authors has enjoyed wide appeal by virtue of its historical accuracy, well-structured narrative, fluent writing and distinctive style.

The bilingual *Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History (VI)* covers a period of history from the early years of the Ming Dynasty to the Opium War. For the sake of brevity, the original Chinese work has been slightly abridged in this bilingual edition.

1、鄱阳湖大战

当朱元璋的势力向南方发展的时候，首先遇到的一个强敌是陈友谅。陈友谅原是徐寿辉起义军的部将，后来他谋杀了徐寿辉，自立为王，国号叫汉。他占据江西、湖南和湖北一带，地广兵多，建立了一个强大的割据政权。公元1360年，他率领强大的水军，从采石沿江东下，进攻应天府，一心想并吞朱元璋占领的地盘。

朱元璋赶忙召集部下商量对付汉军的办法。有的说，跟汉军的力量相差太大，不如趁早投降；有的主张逃到钟山（在今南京）死守；也有人主张拼一死战，如果失败，再逃不晚。大家七嘴八舌，议论纷纷。只有新来的谋士刘基站在一边，一声不吭。

朱元璋犹豫不决，散了会，把刘基单独留下来，问他有什么主意。刘基说：“我看那些主张投降和逃走的人就该杀！”

朱元璋说：“请问先生有什么办法打败敌人？”

1. Battle at Lake Poyang

The first formidable enemy encountered by Zhu Yuanzhang in his southward expansion was Chen Youliang, who was a commander in the insurgency led by Xu Shouhui. After murdering Xu, his former superior, Chen proclaimed himself king of a regime he called "Han". Owing to its vast area and abundant supply of combatants, Chen's separatist regime, which straddled Jiangxi, Hunan and Hubei, soon became a power to be reckoned with. In 1360 Chen Youliang sailed his powerful naval force down the Yangtze from Caishi in a bold bid to attack Yingtian in the east and gobble up the territory under Zhu Yuanzhang's control.

Zhu Yuanzhang called an urgent meeting of his commanders to discuss their response. One party believed they should surrender before being overrun by the overwhelming force of Chen Youliang; others argued for retreating to Mount Zhongshan, in modern-day Nanjing, where they would entrench themselves; still others advocated engaging the enemy in a decisive battle and only beating a retreat when defeated. In the heated discussion, only the recently recruited adviser, Liu Ji, remained conspicuously silent.

The discussion left Zhu Yuanzhang undecided. He asked Liu Ji to stay behind after the meeting and solicited his view.

Liu Ji said, "Those who advocated surrender or retreat deserve, in my view, to die."

"Then how do you propose to thwart the attack?" asked Zhu Yuanzhang.

刘基说：“敌人远道来侵犯，我们以逸待劳，还怕不能取胜？您如果多用财物赏赐将士，再用一点伏兵，抓住汉军的弱点痛击，要打败陈友谅就大有希望。”

朱元璋听了刘基的话，满心喜欢。两个人又商量了一阵，把计策定了下来。

朱元璋的部将康茂才跟陈友谅是老相识。朱元璋把康茂才找来，对他说：“这次陈友谅来进攻，我要引他上钩，没有你帮助不行。请你写封信给陈友谅，假装投降，答应做他的内应，再给他一点假情报，要他兵分三路攻打应天，分散他的兵力。”

康茂才说：“这事不难。我家有个守门的老仆，给陈友谅当过差。派他送信去，陈友谅准不会怀疑。”

康茂才回到家里，按照朱元璋的吩咐写了信，连夜叫老仆赶到采石，求见陈友谅。陈友谅见了老仆送来的信，果然并不怀疑，问老仆说：“康公现在在哪里？”

老仆回答说：“现在他带了一支人马，驻守江东桥，专等大王去。”

陈友谅连忙又问：“江东桥是啥样子？”

"The enemy has traveled a great distance to attack us," replied Liu Ji. "We have the advantage of a well-rested army against its exhausted troops. It is not difficult under these circumstances to defeat the enemy. By offering monetary incentives to your officers and men, and by laying ambushes to hit the vulnerable points of the Han troops, you have a very good chance of defeating Chen Youliang's force."

Zhu Yuanzhang was pleased by Liu Ji's analysis. The two went on to map out the battle plan.

Zhu Yuanzhang summoned his subaltern Kang Maocai, who was an old acquaintance of Chen Youliang, and told him, "Your help is indispensable for executing my plan to ensnare Chen Youliang. I need you to write a letter to him feigning surrender and offering your assistance as his sleeper agent. You are to feed him misinformation and advise him to attack Yingtian along three routes so that his army will be stretched thin."

"This won't be difficult," Kang Maocai replied. "I have an old servant in my household who once ran errands for Chen Youliang. If he delivers the letter, Chen Youliang will not find it suspicious."

Kang Maocai went home and immediately composed a letter as instructed by Zhu Yuanzhang. That very night, his old servant was dispatched with the letter to Caishi in order to seek a meeting with Chen Youliang. As predicted, the letter did not arouse any suspicion in Chen Youliang, who asked the servant, "Where is Mr. Kang now?"

The old servant replied, "He's now camped near Jiangdong Bridge with his army, waiting to join forces with you."

"What is Jiangdong Bridge like?" asked Chen Youliang eagerly.

"It's a wooden bridge," the old servant replied. "You can't miss it."

老仆说：“是座木桥，容易认得出来。”

陈友谅跟老仆谈了一阵，吩咐左右摆上酒菜，让老仆饱饱地吃了一顿，才打发他回去。老仆临走的时候，陈友谅对他说：“你回去跟康公说，我马上就去江东桥，到了桥边，我叫几声‘老康’，请他马上转应。”

老仆回去后，把陈友谅的话全向朱元璋回报了。朱元璋连声叫好，当夜派人把江东的木桥拆掉，改成一座石桥。

朱元璋从陈友谅的逃兵那儿得到情报，弄清楚他们进攻的路线，就让大将徐达、常遇春等分几路在沿江几个重要关口埋伏了人马。朱元璋亲自统率大军守在卢龙山（今南京狮子山），布置兵士准备好红黄两面旗帜，规定了信号，举起红旗就是通知敌人已经到来，举起黄旗就是命令伏兵出击，一切都准备好了，只等陈友谅自投罗网。

陈友谅自从老仆走后，立刻下令全体水军出发，由他亲自带领，直驶江东桥。哪想到到了约定地点，竟没见木桥，只有石桥。陈友谅的部将们都起了疑心。陈友谅想，别管他是石桥还

After talking with the old servant a while longer, Chen Youliang ordered food and wine for him. Before the servant set out for home after the plentiful meal, Chen Youliang said to him:

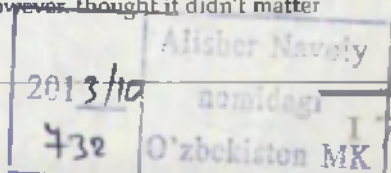
"Tell Mr. Kang that I will soon go to Jiangdong Bridge to meet with him. When I approach the bridge I will call out his name, 'Lao Kang, Lao Kang', a few times. That will be the signal for him to immediately join forces with me."

Upon his return, the old servant rendered a full report of his meeting with Chen to Zhu Yuanzhang.

"Bravo! Well done!" Zhu Yuanzhang gushed effusively. That very night, he ordered the wooden bridge at Jiangdong dismantled and replaced with a stone bridge.

With information obtained from Chen Youliang's deserters, Zhu Yuanzhang had advance knowledge of Chen's planned route of attack and deployed troops accordingly. Under the command of generals Xu Da and Chang Yuchun, troops laid ambushes at strategic points along the river. Zhu Yuanzhang camped with the bulk of his force at Lulong Hill, the modern-day Shizi, or Lion Hill, close to Nanjing. Two flags, one red and one yellow, were to be used as signals: when the red flag was raised, it would signal the approach of enemy troops; the yellow flag would be an order for troops to come out of their ambush and attack the enemy. They waited patiently for Chen Youliang to walk into the trap.

Shortly after the departure of the old servant, Chen Youliang ordered his entire naval force to set sail toward Jiangdong Bridge, with him in personal command. At the appointed location, there was no wooden bridge in sight. To their puzzlement, what greeted them instead was a stone bridge, causing Chen's troops to pause in confusion. Chen Youliang, however, thought it didn't matter



是木桥，只要找到康茂才就好。他就到石桥旁边，一连喊了几声“老康”，也没人答应。陈友谅这才想到自己上了当，急忙命令船队撤退。

朱元璋发现敌人中计，立刻叫兵士举起黄旗，发动进攻。一瞬间，战鼓齐鸣，岸上伏兵一起杀出，水港里的水军也加入战斗。

陈友谅受到突然袭击，几万大军一下子乱了套，被杀死的和落水淹死的数也数不清，两万兵士、一百多艘战船被朱元璋的将士俘获。陈友谅在部将保护下，抢了一条小船，总算逃了命。

这一仗打得陈友谅大伤元气。朱元璋的声势却越来越大。陈友谅哪肯甘心，他养精蓄锐，决心要报这个仇。过了三年，他造了大批战船，又带领六十万大军，进攻洪都（今江西南昌）。

朱元璋亲自带领二十万大军援救洪都，陈友谅才撤去包围，把水军全部撤到鄱阳湖。朱元璋把鄱阳湖出口封锁起来，堵住敌人，决定跟陈友谅在湖里决战。

陈友谅的水军有大批战船，又高又大，一字儿排开，竟有

whether the bridge was stone or wooden, as long as Kang Maocai was there to meet with him. As he approached the stone bridge, Chen repeatedly called out, "Lao Kang! Lao Kang!" Only when there was no reply did Chen realize he'd been double-crossed and ordered an immediate withdrawal.

On receiving confirmation that the enemy had walked into his trap, Zhu Yuanzhang ordered the yellow flag raised to signal an attack. At the signal, battle drums started rolling and the ambushers on the shore surged out of hiding, with naval troops joining the attack.

Caught by surprise, the tens of thousands of troops led by Chen Youliang were thrown into disarray. Many were slain or drowned; twenty thousand men and over a hundred battleships were captured by Zhu Yuanzhang's troops. Escorted by his subalterns, Chen Youliang managed to commandeer a small boat and flee to freedom.

Chen Youliang's fighting force suffered a major setback in this battle while Zhu Yuanzhang's emerged stronger. Not prepared to accept defeat, Chen put his troops through a period of rigorous training, determined to exact his revenge. Three years later, having built a large number of battleships, Chen Youliang again led 600,000 troops in an attack on Zhu Yuanzhang's territory, this time on Hongdu, or modern-day Nanchang in Jiangxi Province.

On hearing of the attack, Zhu Yuanzhang raced with 200,000 troops to defend Hongdu. On Zhu's arrival, Chen lifted the siege and moved his naval force to Lake Poyang. Zhu's forces responded by blocking all outlets of the lake to force Chen Youliang to a decisive duel in the lake.

Chen Youliang's armada of tall ships extending for miles

十几里长，朱元璋的水军，却尽是一些小船，论实力比陈友谅差得多。双方连续打了三天，朱军都失败了。

部将郭兴跟朱元璋说：“双方的兵力相差太远，靠打硬仗不行，非用火攻不可。”

朱元璋立刻命令用七条小船，装载着火药，每条船尾带着一只轻快的小船。那天傍晚，正好刮起了东北风，朱元璋派了一支敢死队驾驶这七条小船，乘风点火，直冲陈友谅大船。风急火烈，一下子就把汉军大船全部延烧起来，火焰腾空，把湖水照得通红。陈友谅手下的将士不是被烧死，就是被俘虏。

陈友谅带着残兵败将向鄱阳湖口突围。但是湖口早已被朱元璋堵住。在陈友谅突围的时候，朱军一阵乱箭，把陈友谅射死。

朱元璋消灭了南方最大的割据势力陈友谅以后，自称吴王。

自从刘福通牺牲以后，朱元璋把小明王接到滁州，名义上还接受小明王的领导。到了这时候，他做皇帝的思想膨胀起来。

confronted Zhu Yuanzhang's much inferior naval force consisting mainly of small crafts. In three days of dueling, Zhu's troops suffered setback after setback.

"We are seriously outnumbered," Zhu's general told him. "Conventional fighting is hopeless. We must resort to fire attacks."

Zhu Yuanzhang took his general's advice and readied seven small boats loaded with gunpowder, each with a fast, lightweight boat in tow. That evening, a helpful northeasterly wind rose and a death-defying team drove the seven boats, now ignited, into Chen's armada of tall ships. With the aid of the wind, the tall ships were soon engulfed in towering flames, coloring the lake red. The majority of Chen Youliang's troops were either captured or burned alive.

Chen Youliang led his remnant force on a dash toward one of the lake's outlets but found it blocked. Chen died in a hail of arrows in his attempt to run the blockade.

After quashing Chen Youliang, leader of the most powerful separatist regime in south China, Zhu Yuanzhang proclaimed himself King of Wu.

Following the death of Liu Futong, Zhu Yuanzhang had installed King Ming, Jr. in Chuzhou, pledging nominal allegiance to him. But now, Zhu's interest in the throne had grown to the extent that he began to find King Ming, Jr. a hindrance to his

觉得留着小明王对他是个障碍。公元1366年，他用船把小明王接到应天，趁小明王在瓜步（今江苏六合东南）过江的时候，派人暗暗凿沉了船，把小明王淹死。

第二年，朱元璋消灭了张士诚割据势力，接着，命令徐达为征虏大将军，常遇春为副将军，率领二十五万大军北伐。过了两个月，徐达的军队旗开得胜，占领了山东。公元1368年正月，朱元璋在应天即位称皇帝，国名叫明。他就是明太祖。

明军乘胜进军，元兵节节败退。这年八月，徐达率领大军直捣大都，元顺帝逃往上都。统治中国九十七年的元王朝终于被推翻。

ambition. In 1366 he sent a ship to transport King Ming, Jr. to Yingtian. At the Guabu crossing, southeast of modern-day Liuhe in Jiangsu Province, King Ming drowned when his boat, sabotaged under Zhu's orders, sank.

The following year, Zhu Yuanzhang succeeded in quashing the separatist regime of Zhang Shicheng. Zhu went on to launch a northern expedition with two hundred fifty thousand troops, led by Xu Da as Zhenglu General-in-chief and Chang Yuchun as deputy commander. Two months later, Zhu's troops took control of Shandong. So it followed, that in January 1368, Zhu Yuanzhang ascended the throne in Yingtian as Emperor Taizu with the dynasty name of "Ming".

The incumbent Yuan army retreated before the inexorable march of the victorious Ming troops. And in the following August, Xu Da's army marched into the Yuan capital of Dadu, forcing Emperor Shundi of Yuan to flee toward Shangdu. Thus ended the Yuan Dynasty, which had ruled China for ninety seven years.

2、刘伯温求雨

明太祖在统一战争中，依靠了一批英勇善战的将领争城夺地，又吸收了一些谋士，帮他出谋划策。在这些谋士中，刘基是最著名的一个。

刘基又叫刘伯温，本来是元朝的官员，因为对元朝的政治腐败不满意，常常写点文章，讽刺时事，后来，被解职回到他的家乡青田（今浙江省的一个县）。朱元璋的军队打到浙东的时候，把刘基请了出来，当他的谋士。在打败陈友谅、张士诚的战争中，刘基出了不少计策。由于他足智多谋，得到明太祖的信任。

刘基不但谋略好，而且精通天文。在古代，往往把天文现象跟人间的吉凶扯在一起。刘基对天下形势观察仔细，考虑问题周到，他的预见往往比较准确。但是大家都认为这跟他精通天文有关。民间传说把刘伯温看作一个“未卜先知”的人物。

2. Liu Bowen Prays for Rain

In his campaigns to unify China, Emperor Taizu of Ming relied on brave and battle-savvy generals to capture towns for him and expand his territory. He also brought in advisers to help him formulate strategies and devise tactics. Liu Ji was one of the most prominent.

Liu Ji, also known as Liu Bowen, had previously served in the Yuan government. Yet, disaffection with the corruption rife in political circles had prompted him to write pieces lampooning current events, eventually leading to his dismissal and premature retirement to his home town of Qingtian (modern-day Qingtian County in Zhejiang Province). When Zhu Yuanzhang's army moved into the eastern part of Zhejiang, Liu Ji was recruited as an adviser to Zhu. Zhu relied heavily on Liu Ji's advice in the campaigns that led to the defeat of Chen Youliang and Zhang Shicheng. Liu earned the trust of Emperor Taizu of Ming by his resourcefulness and shrewdness.

Besides his expertise in strategic and tactical thinking, Liu Ji also possessed an excellent knowledge of astronomy. In ancient times, astronomical phenomena were often interpreted as omens of earthly events. Although Liu Ji's ability to make generally accurate predictions about current events was actually grounded in keen observation and thorough analysis, his ability was generally perceived to derive from his knowledge of astronomy. Liu Bowen was treated in popular legend as someone with the gift of prophecy.

朱元璋当吴王的时候，江南发生了一场旱灾。刘基掌管天文，朱元璋问他为什么发生大旱，怎样才能求上天下雨。刘基说：“天一直不下雨，因为牢狱里关押的人有冤枉。”

朱元璋信了刘基的话，派他去查牢监里关的犯人。刘基一查，果然有不少冤案。他向朱元璋奏明后，平反了冤案，把错抓的人放了。

求雨和平反本来是毫不相干的两码事，刘基也不可能有什么求雨的法术。不过他懂得天文，可能观测到气象要发生变化，就借这个机会劝谏朱元璋平反冤案。果然不出几天，乌云密布，接着就下了一场透雨。刘基趁朱元璋高兴的时候，又劝他制定法律，依法办事，防止错杀无辜的人。

明太祖即位以后，叫刘基做御史中丞，负责司法工作。刘基严格执法。有一次，丞相李善长的一个亲信犯了法。李善长是明王朝开国功臣，又是明太祖的同乡，势力很大。但是刘基

During a severe drought in the lower reaches of the Yangtze River, during Zhu Yuanzhang's reign as King of Wu, Liu Ji, who was in charge of astronomical matters, was asked by Zhu Yuanzhang why the drought had happened and what it would take to invoke rain. Liu Ji told him the long dry spell had been caused by the incarceration of wrongfully convicted prisoners.

Zhu Yuanzhang believed in Liu Ji's wisdom and asked him to review the cases of those sentenced to prison terms. The review found a significant number of cases of wrongful imprisonment. After reporting his findings to Zhu Yuanzhang, Liu overturned the wrongful convictions and freed the prisoners in question. A few days later a soaking rain poured down from an overcast sky, fulfilling Liu's prophecy.

The rain, in fact, had nothing to do with the overturning of wrongful convictions and neither did Liu Ji possess any magical rain-making powers. It may well be that his knowledge of astronomy had enabled him to observe an imminent change of weather which he deftly exploited to persuade Zhu Yuanzhang to correct those miscarriages of justice. Taking advantage of Zhu Yuanzhang's high spirits after the rain, Liu Ji made a case for enacting and implementing laws to prevent future miscarriages of justice and loss of innocent lives.

Upon his accession, Emperor Taizu of Ming made Liu Ji Palace Aide To The Censor-in-Chief, in charge of the administration of justice. Liu Ji proved a strict law enforcer. Shortly after his appointment, an offense was committed by a trusted aide of grand councilor Li Shanchang. Li had contributed much to the founding of the Ming Dynasty and was from the same village as Emperor Taizu of Ming. Despite Li's obstructions, Liu Ji had the aide

不顾李善长的阻挠，奏明明太祖，把那个亲信杀了。这件事当然招来了李善长的怨恨。

正巧这一年，京城又逢到大旱，明太祖十分着急。刘基乘机跟明太祖说：“战争中的死亡将士，他们的妻子需要抚恤，一些在筑城中死亡的工匠，尸骨还暴露在田野上，没人收埋。把这些事办了，说不定能下雨。”

明太祖一心求雨，当然很快批准了刘基的要求，抚恤了将士妻子，掩埋了工匠的尸骨。刘基虽然办了一件好事，但是靠这种办法劝谏，毕竟靠不住。这一次，他的预测不准，过了十天，还是烈日当空，一滴雨也没下。

这可使明太祖生了气，再加上李善长在旁边说坏话，叫刘基不能不害怕。这时候，他妻子在家乡得病死去，刘基请个假回老家了。

executed after informing the emperor. This naturally incurred the ill will of Li Shanchang.

The imperial capital suffered another severe drought that year, causing high anxiety in Emperor Taizu of Ming. Liu Ji seized the opportunity to make another case for justice before Emperor Taizu.

"The wives of soldiers and officers who gave their lives on the battlefield await compensation," he pleaded. "And the bodies of craftsmen who died building the city walls are still exposed to the elements without a proper burial. If these problems could be taken care of, heaven might be moved to rain."

In his eagerness for rain, Emperor Taizu of Ming naturally approved the requests of Liu Ji with alacrity: the wives of fallen officers and soldiers received prompt financial compensation and the remains of the city wall builders killed in the line of duty were duly buried. Liu Ji had intervened in a worthy cause, but the method he relied on to persuade the emperor proved not consistently reliable. This time, his prediction proved false, and ten days later the sun still blazed down from a cloudless sky without a hint of rain.

The lack of rain invoked the wrath of Emperor Taizu, and with Li Shanchang fanning the imperial ire with derogatory remarks about him, Liu Ji could not help but feel afraid. It happened that Liu's wife had just died of illness in his home town and so he wasted no time in obtaining leave to go home.

Despite this failure, Emperor Taizu of Ming still highly valued Liu Ji's service and advice. In fact, he intended to make Liu Ji a grand councilor. Liu hastened to decline the offer.

"Choosing a grand councilor," he told the emperor, "is like choosing the main beam of a house. You need strong, bulky timber for it. Flimsy timber will likely cause the house to collapse."

其实，明太祖对刘基是特别器重的。有一次，明太祖要拜刘基为丞相，刘基连忙推辞说：“选丞相好比挑栋梁，要挑个大木材，如果用小木头当梁柱，房屋就有倒塌的危险。”

后来，明太祖撤了丞相李善长的职，又想请刘基出来当丞相。刘基说：“我性子着急，容不得坏人，再说年纪大了，也担当不了这样重任。天下有的是人才，希望陛下好好物色。”

刘基回到青田，过普通隐居生活，从来不限人谈起他过去的功劳。青田县令一再求见，都被刘基婉言拒绝。有一次，县令换上便服，装扮成个乡下人去拜访刘基，刘基正在洗脚，见来了陌生人，连忙穿了鞋子，把来人请进屋，热情地留饭。

刘基请教来人姓名，县令只好实说：“我是青田知县，特来拜见先生。”刘基大吃一惊，连忙起身作揖，自称是治下的普通百姓。打那以后，再也不敢县令见面了。

刘基住在家乡，仍旧很关心明朝的政事。有一次，明太祖派人到青田向刘基问天象吉凶。刘基说：“冬天刚下过严霜薄雪，接下来便是阳春季节。现在国家已经安定，希望陛下施政稍为宽和一点。”

When Emperor Taizu eventually dismissed Li Shanchang as grand councilor, he once again brought up the subject of having Liu Ji take over the post.

"I have a short, impatient temper," responded Liu Ji, "especially when it comes to dealing with unsavory characters. Besides, at my advanced age, I am no longer fit for undertaking such a weighty responsibility. There is no dearth of talent in the country. His Majesty only needs to pick the man best qualified for the job."

Liu Ji retired to Qingtian to lead the life of a recluse. He never mentioned his past contributions to his family and neighbors. All requests made by the local county magistrate to pay a visit were courteously refused. Finally, the county magistrate dropped by, disguised as a peasant. Liu Ji was washing his feet when the stranger approached. He immediately put on his shoes and invited the peasant into his home and even asked him to stay for a meal.

When Liu Ji asked for the stranger's name, the county magistrate had to reveal his true identity.

"I am the county magistrate of Qingtian," he told Liu Ji. "I have come to pay you a visit."

Liu Ji, greatly surprised, rose from his chair to make a bow, describing himself as just a common person. That was the last meeting he allowed himself with the county magistrate.

Even in retirement, Liu Ji remained concerned about the political wellbeing of the Ming Dynasty. One day, an envoy was sent by Emperor Taizu of Ming to Qingtian to consult Liu Ji on meteorological omens.

"After the severe, freezing winter" prophesized Liu Ji, "comes balmy spring. Now that the country is blessed with peace and stability, it is hoped that His Majesty will rule with leniency."

3、胡惟庸案件

明太祖是农家出身的，对农民生活多少有点了解。他即位以后，也注意实行休养生息的政策。他告诫地方官员说：“现在天下刚刚安定，百姓财力困乏，好像初飞的鸟，不能拔它的毛，新种的树，不能掘它的根。”他要官员们廉洁守法，不能贪赃枉法，加重人民负担。以后，他又招集流亡农民，开垦荒地，免除三年的劳役和赋税，要各地驻军屯田垦荒，做到粮食自给。他还兴修水利，奖励植棉种麻。所以，明朝初年的农业生产有了很明显的发展。新建立的明王朝统治也巩固下来。

但是明太祖总不放心那些帮助他开国的功臣。他设立一个叫做“锦衣卫”的特务机构，专门监视、侦察大臣的活动。大臣

3. The Hu Weiyong Affair

Coming from a peasant family himself, Emperor Taizu of Ming had some understanding of peasant life. After his accession to the throne, Emperor Taizu recognized the importance of allowing the people to rest and recuperate.

"The country has only recently emerged from civil strife," he admonished local officials. "The populace is financially strapped—it's like a fledgling whose feathers will not stand plucking, and a sapling whose root will not stand rigorous shaking."

The emperor exhorted officials to practice clean governance and abide by the law in order not to add to the people's burden through official corruption and lawbreaking. He organized displaced peasants in a land reclamation project, exempting them from obligatory duties and taxes for three years. He ordered troops to engage in agriculture and the cultivation of waste land for food growing so that they could be self-sufficient. Major irrigation and drainage projects were undertaken and the planting of cotton and hemp encouraged. As a result of these measures, agricultural production made remarkable strides in the early Ming period; this in turn solidified the rule of the newly founded Ming Dynasty.

But Emperor Taizu of Ming had misgivings about those credited with major contributions to the founding of his dynasty. He established the *Jin Yi Wei* or "Guards of Embroidered Coats", a secret service tasked with spying on his ministers. With the *Jin Yi Wei* reporting to him directly, Emperor Taizu was able to have

在外面或者家里有什么动静，他都打听得一清二楚。谁被发现有什么嫌疑，就有被打进牢狱甚至杀头的危险。

明太祖对待官员极其严酷，大臣上朝的时候惹他发了火，就在朝廷上被按在地上打板子，叫做“廷杖”，也有被当场打死的。这种做法弄得大臣们个个提心吊胆，每天上朝的时候，都愁眉苦脸地向家里亲人告别。如果这一天平安无事，回到家里，亲人就高高兴兴庆幸他又活了一天。

公元1380年，丞相胡惟庸被告发叛国谋反，明太祖立刻把胡惟庸满门抄斩，还追究他的同党。这一追究，竟株连文武官员一万五千多人。明太祖一发狠心，把那些有胡党嫌疑的人全杀了。

学士宋濂，是明朝开国初期跟刘基一起受明太祖重用过的，后来，又当过太子的老师。宋濂为人谨慎小心，但是明太祖对他也并不放心。有一次，宋濂在家里请几个朋友喝酒。第二天上朝，明太祖问他昨天喝过酒没有，请了哪些客人，备了哪些菜。宋濂一一照实回答。明太祖笑着说：“你没欺骗我。”原来，那天宋濂家请客的时候，明太祖已暗暗派人去监视了。后来，明太祖在朝廷上称赞宋濂说：“宋濂伺候我十九年，从没说过一句谎言，也没说过别人一句坏话，真是个贤人啊！”宋濂六十八岁那年告老回乡，明太祖还送他一幅锦缎，说：“留着它，再过三十二年，做件百岁衣吧！”

intimate knowledge of all the doings and sayings of his ministers, wherever they were, including in the privacy of their own homes. Anyone coming under suspicion risked jail or execution.

Emperor Taizu of Ming was strict to the point of cruelty with his officials. If a minister incurred his wrath during the daily assembly, he would be forced to lie prostrate on the ground and then flogged in front of the entire court. Some officials were beaten to death in these "court canings." This practice put the ministers on tenterhooks. Every morning before they attended the imperial audience they would bid adieu to their families with a heavy heart and worried mien. If a minister came out of the audience unscathed, he would receive hearty congratulations from his family when he got home for having survived another grueling day.

In 1380, grand councilor Hu Weiyong was denounced for treason and seditious intentions. Emperor Taizu of Ming immediately had all the members of Hu's family beheaded and started a witch hunt for his partisans. Upwards of fifteen thousand civil and military officials were implicated. Emperor Taizu cold-bloodedly massacred all those suspected of being cohorts of Hu Weiyong.

Song Lian, an academic, was, like Liu Ji, a trusted aide of Emperor Taizu of Ming in the early years of the Ming Dynasty and acted as the crown prince's tutor. Song Lian was a very cautious man but that didn't prevent Emperor Taizu from questioning his loyalty. One day, Song Lian had a few friends over to his home for drinks. The next day, Emperor Taizu of Ming asked him if he had drunk the day before, who he'd invited over and what dishes were served. Song Lian answered all the emperor's questions truthfully.

胡惟庸案件发生后，宋濂的孙子宋慎也被揭发是胡党，于是株连到宋濂。明太祖派锦衣卫把宋濂从金华老家抓到京城，要把他处死。

这件事让马皇后知道了。马皇后劝明太祖说：“老百姓家为孩子请个老师，尚且恭恭敬敬，好来好去，何况是皇帝家的老师呢。再说，宋先生一向住在乡下，他孙子的事他怎么会知道？”

明太祖正在火头上，不肯饶恕宋濂。当天，马皇后陪明太祖吃饭。她呆呆地坐在桌边，不沾酒，也不吃肉。明太祖感到奇怪，问她是不是身子不舒服。马皇后难过地说：“宋先生犯了死罪，我心里十分难受，在为宋先生祈福呢。”

"You did not lie to me," said Emperor Taizu with a satisfied smile.

Emperor Taizu had in fact ordered covert surveillance on Song Lian's party the night before. As a result of his honesty, the emperor was heard to praise Song Lian before the entire court.

"Song Lian has never once lied to me or uttered a single derogatory remark about others in his nineteen years of service to me," he proclaimed. "He is a true sage."

At the age of 68, Song Lian retired to his home town. Emperor Taizu of Ming gave him a parting gift of a piece of brocade.

"Save this for 32 years," the emperor told him. "When you turn 100 you can have a centennial dress made from it."

However, during the investigation into the Hu Weiyong affair, Song Lian was implicated through his grandson Song Shen, who had been branded a Hu partisan. Emperor Taizu sent his "Embroidered Coats" to Jinhua, Song Lian's home town, to bring him to Beijing to be executed.

When Empress Ma learned of the fate reserved for Song Lian, she tried to make Emperor Taizu change his mind.

"Even common folk know how to treat their children's teachers with respect," she chastised him. "Is this the respect an imperial tutor gets from you? Besides, Mr. Song has stayed all this time in his home town; you can't expect him to know about his grandson's doings in the capital."

In the heat of his anger, Emperor Taizu was in no mood to forgive Song Lian. That day at dinner, Empress Ma sat quietly at the table, touching neither drink nor meat. Emperor Taizu was puzzled by her unusual behavior and asked her if she felt unwell.

Empress Ma replied in sorrow, "I feel deeply saddened by Mr.

马皇后是跟太祖年轻时候共过患难的夫妻，明太祖平时对她比较尊重，听她这一说，也有点感动，才下令赦免宋濂死罪，改罚充军茂州（今四川茂县）。七十多岁的宋濂，禁不起这场惊吓，再加上路上劳累，没到茂州就死了。

过了十年，又有人告发李善长和胡惟庸往来密切，明知胡惟庸谋反不检举揭发，采取观望态度，犯了大逆不道的罪。李善长是第一号开国功臣，又是明太祖的亲家。明太祖大封功臣的时候，曾经赐给李善长两道免死铁券。这一年，李善长已经七十七岁了，可是明太祖一翻脸，把李善长和他的全家七十儿口全部处死。

接着，又一次追查胡党，处死了一万五千多人。

自从胡惟庸案件发生以后，明太祖觉得把军政大权交给大臣不放心，就取消了丞相职位，由皇帝直接管辖吏部、户部、礼

Song being charged with a capital offense. I am praying for him."

Empress Ma had loyally supported Emperor Taizu since their youth, and he valued her opinions. Her words produced an effect on him, causing him to reduce Song Lian's death sentence to the more lenient sentence of garrison duty in exile. Song Lian was duly exiled to Maozhou, modern-day Mao County in Sichuan Province. However, the aged Song Lian died on the journey to Maozhou as a result of the harrowing experience and the rigors of travel.

Ten years later, Li Shanchang, Emperor Taizu's former grand councilor, was denounced for having had close contacts with Hu Weiyong and having certain knowledge of Hu's seditious intentions. Instead of denouncing Hu, Li Shanchang chose to do nothing and thus committed a cardinal sin. Li Shanchang was considered to have made the greatest individual contribution to the founding of the dynasty and was related to Emperor Taizu by marriage. When Emperor Taizu meted out rewards to those who had helped put him in the throne, he gave two imperial life-saving certificates to Li Shanchang. Despite these guarantees given by the emperor, the 77-year-old Li Shanchang and the rest of his family—more than seventy of them, were executed by Emperor Taizu, who showed no regard for past service, affection or promises.

In another roundup of Hu partisans, a further fifteen thousand people were executed.

Since the Hu Weiyong crisis, Emperor Taizu no longer felt comfortable entrusting ministers with military and executive powers. He abolished the post of grand councilor and ordered the heads of the Ministry of Personnel, the Ministry of Revenue,

部、兵部、刑部、工部六个部的尚书（官名，部的长官），又把掌握军权的大都督府废了，改设左、右、中、前、后五个都督府，分别训练兵士，需要打仗的时候，由皇帝直接发布命令。这样一来，明朝皇帝的权力就大大集中了。

事情并没到这里结束。过了三年，锦衣卫又告发大将蓝玉谋反。明太祖杀了蓝玉，追查同谋，又有文武官员一万五千多人受株连被杀。

这两件大案，几乎把朝廷功臣一扫而空，明太祖的专制和残暴在历史上也就出了名。

the Ministry of Rites, the Ministry of War, the Ministry of Justice and the Ministry of Works to report directly to him. He abolished the Chief Military Command, which was in charge of all military forces and established in its place five Chief Military Commissions (the Left, Right, Center, Forward and Rear Commissions), each in charge of its own military force, to be put under the emperor's command in times of war. Power was thus greatly centralized under the emperor of the Ming Dynasty.

The crisis of Hu Weiyong was not the last, and three years later the *Jin Yi Wei* denounced General Lan Yu for seditious intent. Emperor Taizu had Lan Yu executed and ordered an investigation to ferret out his co-conspirators. As a result, fifteen thousand civil and military officials were found implicated and executed.

In the aftermath of these two high-profile cases, the imperial court was purged of nearly all those who had made a contribution to the founding of the Ming Dynasty. Emperor Taizu of Ming thus gained notoriety in history as a ruthless dictator.

4、燕王进南京

明太祖一面杀了一些权位很高的大臣，一面把他的二十四个儿子分封到各地为王。其中一部分藩王还拥有军队。明太祖认为这样做，可以巩固他建立的明王朝的统治，哪料到后来反引起了一场大乱。

明太祖六十多岁的时候，太子朱标死了，朱标的儿子朱允炆（音 wén）以长孙的地位，被立为皇太孙。各地的藩王大都是朱允炆的叔父，眼看皇位的继承权落到侄儿手里，心里不舒服。特别是明太祖的第四个儿子——燕王朱棣（音 dì）一向带兵驻守北平（今北京市），多次立过战功，对朱允炆更不服气。

朱棣在明太祖的儿子中是比较精明能干的。据说有一次，明太祖叫朱允炆对对子，出的上联是“风吹马尾千条线”，朱允炆对的下联是“雨打羊毛一片膻（音 shān）”，明太祖嫌他对得不

4. The Prince of Yan Marches into Nanjing

As Emperor Taizu of Ming busied himself with killing off his powerful ministers, he concurrently made each of his twenty-four sons Prince of a fiefdom. Some of the feudatory princes had their own armies. Emperor Taizu of Ming believed that this arrangement would solidify the rule of the Ming little knowing that he had sown the seed of future anarchy.

When Emperor Taizu of Ming reached his sixties, his crown prince Zhu Biao died and Zhu Yunwen, Zhu Biao's son, was designated heir to the throne on account of his status as oldest grandson of the reigning emperor. Most of the feudatory princes were uncles of Zhu Yunwen and were upset by the likely succession of their nephew. One prince in particular found it difficult to accept the designation of Zhu Yunwen as heir apparent. He was Zhu Di, Prince of Yan, who was the fourth son of Emperor Taizu, stationed with his troops in Beiping (today's Beijing) and credited with many battle victories.

Zhu Di was among the more capable and intelligent of Emperor Taizu's sons. It is said that Emperor Taizu once asked Zhu Yunwen to complete a matching couplet. The emperor read out his line:

'The wind blows at the horse's tail, creating a thousand lines'.

Zhu Yunwen came up with the matching line:

'The rain beats on the sheep's wool, raising a big bad stink'.

Emperor Taizu's face fell in disapproval. Zhu Di, who

好，马上沉下了脸。朱棣正好在旁边，就接嘴说：“孩儿倒也想了一个下联。”明太祖叫他说来听听。朱棣说：“日照龙鳞万点金。”原来龙是皇帝的象征。朱棣的对语，无非是想讨明太祖的欢心。明太祖听了，连声夸奖朱棣对得好。朱棣也就更不把朱允炆放在眼里了。

朱允炆虽然老实，对朱棣瞧不起他，毕竟还看得出来。皇太孙的东宫里，有个官员叫黄子澄，是朱允炆的伴读老师。有一次，朱允炆一个人坐在东角门口，皱起眉头长叹气。黄子澄见他心事重重，问太孙为什么发愁。朱允炆说：“现在几个叔父手里都有兵权，将来怎么管得了他们。”

黄子澄先跟朱允炆讲了一个西汉平定七国之乱的故事，接着说：“当时吴楚七国诸侯这样强大，但是到他们发动叛乱，汉景帝一出兵，他们就垮了。殿下是皇上嫡孙，将来也不怕他们造反。”朱允炆听了，心总算放宽了一点。

公元1398年，明太祖死去，皇太孙朱允炆即位，这就是明惠帝，历史上又叫建文帝（建文是年号）。当时京城里就听到

happened to be present, said "I have a matching line too". When prompted by Emperor Taizu, Zhu Di read out:

"The sun turns the dragon's scales into ten thousand glitters of gold."

Zhu Di's matching line clearly aimed to please the emperor as it referred to the dragon, a symbol of imperial power. Emperor Taizu had high praise for Zhu Di's matching verse and Zhu Di became even more dismissive of Zhu Yunwen.

Although relatively unsophisticated, Zhu Yunwen was not unaware of Zhu Di's low opinion of him. One day Huang Zicheng, an official in the Eastern Palace (reserved for imperial heirs) and Zhu Yunwen's teacher and reading companion, saw the latter sitting alone outside the eastern entrance of the palace, with his brow tightly knit and heaving deep, long sighs. Huang Zicheng asked the clearly troubled and pensive heir what was weighing on his mind.

"All my uncles have their armies," replied Zhu Yunwen. "How can I control them in the future?"

Huang Zicheng told Zhu Yunwen the story of how the Western Han had overcome the Rebellion of the Seven States.

"As powerful as the Wu and the Chu and the other five feudal states were," Huang Zicheng concluded, "the moment Emperor Jing of Han unleashed his army on them, their rebellion crumbled. In the same vein, as a direct descendant of the emperor, His Highness need not worry about rebellion by his uncles."

His teacher's tale reassured Zhu Yunwen to an extent.

Upon the death of Emperor Taizu of Ming in 1398, Zhu Yunwen acceded to the throne as Emperor Hui of Ming, also known as Emperor Jianwen (Jianwen being one of his era names). The imperial capital was soon abuzz with rumor about contacts

谣传，说几位藩王正在互相串联，准备谋反。建文帝听了这消息害怕起来，把黄子澄找来说：“先生可记得那次在东角门说的话吗？”

黄子澄说：“陛下放心，我怎么会忘记呢！”

黄子澄退出官门，就找建文帝另一个亲信大臣齐泰一起商量。齐泰认为诸王之中，燕王兵力最强，野心又大，应该首先削除燕王的权力。黄子澄不赞成这个做法，他认为燕王早有准备，先从他下手，容易打草惊蛇，不如先向燕王周围的藩王下手。周王朱橚（音 xīāo）是燕王的弟弟，他的封地在开封。如果先把周王除掉，就好比砍掉燕王的翅膀，下一步再除掉燕王就不难了。

两人商量停当，就向建文帝回奏。建文帝听了很高兴，就找个由头派兵到河南把周王朱橚抓起来押到南京，削去王位，充军到云南。接着，又查出三个藩王有不法行为，把他们一个个削去王位。

燕王早就暗中练兵，准备谋反。为了麻痹建文帝，他假装

between the other princes in preparation for a coup. Taking fright at the reported coup preparations, Emperor Jianwen called in Huang Zicheng.

"Do you remember what you said to me near the eastern entrance of my palace?" he asked him.

"Don't worry, His Majesty!" Huang Zicheng replied. "How could I have forgotten?"

As soon as Huang Zicheng left the imperial palace, he met with Qi Tai, another of Emperor Jianwen's trusted aides. Qi Tai was of the view that of all the princes the Prince of Yan had the most powerful army and had big plans for his future. He should therefore be the first to have his wings clipped. Huang Zicheng disagreed. In his opinion the Prince of Yan had prepared himself for a confrontation and therefore it would be prudent to act first against princes on the periphery of the Prince of Yan's fiefdom. Zhu Xiao, Prince of Zhou, was the Prince of Yan's brother and had his fiefdom in Kaifeng. Neutralizing the Prince of Zhou would be tantamount to clipping the wings of the Prince of Yan and facilitating his elimination.

After reaching a consensus, the two trusted aides reported back to Emperor Jianwen, who liked what he heard and sent troops on some vague pretext to Henan to arrest Zhu Xiao and bring him back to Nanjing. He was stripped of his title and sent to Yunnan on garrison duty. Another three princes were soon found to have violated the law in some way and all similarly lost their title of prince.

The Prince of Yan had long been training his army for a rebellion. In order to lull Emperor Jianwen into a false sense of security, he feigned insanity, talking nonsense all day long and

发了精神病，成天胡言乱语，有时候还躺在地上，几天不起来。建文帝派使臣去探病，那时候正是大热天，燕王却坐在火炉边烤火，嘴里还不停地叫冷。使臣一回报，建文帝也相信燕王真的病了。

但是齐泰、黄子澄却怀疑燕王装病，他们一面派人到北平把燕王的家属抓起来，一面又秘密命令北平都指挥使张信带兵逮捕燕王，还约定燕王府的一些官员当内应。不料张信是站在燕王一边的，反向燕王告密。

燕王得到消息，就把王府里充当建文帝内应的官员全抓起来，宣布起兵。燕王是个精明人，知道建文帝毕竟是法定的皇帝，公开反叛，对自己不利，就找个起兵的理由，说要帮助建文帝除掉奸臣黄子澄、齐泰。历史上把这场内战叫做“靖难之变”（靖难是平定内乱的意思）。

燕王本来有带兵打仗的经验，手下有一支经过训练的精兵。他起兵南下，很快攻下了一些据点，许多州县的官员纷纷投降。

sometimes lying on the ground for days. When an envoy was sent by Emperor Jianwen to visit him, he found the Prince of Yan trying to keep warm by a brazier, all the while complaining of feeling cold, in the middle of summer! After hearing the envoy's report, Emperor Jianwen was convinced the Prince of Yan was really sick.

But Qi Tai and Huang Zicheng had their suspicions about the veracity of the Prince of Yan's illness. They sent a party to Beijing to detain members of the Prince of Yan's family while issuing a secret order to Zhang Xin, Regional Military Commissioner of Beijing, to send troops to arrest the Prince of Yan. Some officials in the prince's household had also been enlisted to provide support for the action. They had not counted on the possibility that Zhang Xin would side with the Prince of Yan and inform him of their plan—which he did.

Upon learning of the arrest plan, the Prince of Yan rounded up all those officials in his household who had agreed to collaborate with Emperor Jianwen and set the coup in motion. Shrewd as he was, the Prince knew that publicly rebelling against Emperor Jianwen, a legitimate ruler, would be to his own disadvantage; so he devised a pretext for his military action, claiming it was aimed at helping Emperor Jianwen to eliminate the evil ministers Huang Zicheng and Qi Tai. This civil war is known to history as *Jing Nan Zhi Bian* or the "Campaign to Clear Away Disorders".

The Prince of Yan was a seasoned military commander with real combat experience and had a well-trained army. He was therefore able to quickly secure a number of strategic positions during his march to the south and the officials of many regions and counties surrendered to him. In a fright, Emperor Jianwen

建文帝害怕起来，撤了齐泰、黄子澄的职，想叫燕王退兵。燕王哪肯罢休。

这场内战，差不多打了三年。到了公元1402年，燕军在淮北遇到朝廷派出的南军的抵抗，打得十分激烈。有些燕军将领主张暂时撤兵，燕王说：“这次进军，只能进，不能退！”

没多久，燕军截断南军运粮的通道，发起突然袭击，南军就一败涂地了。

燕军势如破竹，进兵到应天城下。建文帝见形势紧急，一面要将士拼死守城，一面派人向燕王求和，愿意割让土地，请求燕王退兵，又遭到燕王的拒绝。

过了几天，守卫京城的大将李景隆打开城门投降，京城终于被燕军攻破。

sacked Qi Tai and Huang Zicheng in an attempt to induce the Prince of Yan to pull back his troops, but the Prince persisted.

This civil war lasted nearly three years. In 1402, a fierce battle erupted in Huaibei, north of the Huai River, between the Prince of Yan's army and the southern troops sent by the Ming court. While some commanders in his army urged a temporary retreat, the Prince of Yan told them, "In this campaign retreat is not an option!"

Soon, the army of the Prince of Yan cut off the government troops' supply route and launched a surprise attack that put them to rout.

From then on, the Yan army met little resistance and easily and quickly arrived at Yingtian. Realizing the dire straits he was in, Emperor Jianwen ordered his troops to defend the capital to the death, and at the same time sent peace envoys to the Prince of Yan, offering to cede territory in exchange for the Prince's agreement to withdraw his troops. The peace overture was again rebuffed by the Prince of Yan.

A few days later, Li Jinglong, the general in command of the capital garrison, opened the city gates in surrender and the capital fell to the Yan army.

燕王带兵进城，只见皇宫大火熊熊，正在燃烧。燕王赶快派兵把大火扑灭，已经烧死了不少人。他查问建文帝的下落，有人报告说，燕兵进城之前，建文帝下命令放火烧宫，建文帝和皇后都跳到大火里自杀了。

燕王朱棣即位，这就是明成祖。到了公元1421年，明成祖迁都北京。打那时候起，北平一直是明朝的京城。

The Prince of Yan entered the city at the head of his troops, only to find the imperial palace engulfed in a raging fire. The Prince of Yan immediately ordered his troops to put out the fire but many had perished in the inferno by the time they succeeded. When he demanded to know the whereabouts of Emperor Jianwen, he was told that before the Yan army had entered the city, Emperor Jianwen had given the order to torch the palace and the emperor and empress had committed suicide by throwing themselves into the flames.

Zhu Di, the Prince of Yan, ascended the throne as Emperor Chengzu of Ming. In 1421 Emperor Chengzu of Ming moved his capital to Beijing and it remained the imperial capital through the rest of the Ming period.

5、三保太监下西洋

明成祖用武力从他侄儿手里夺得了皇位，有一件事总使他心里不大踏实。皇宫大火扑灭之后，并没有找到建文帝的尸体。那么建文帝到底是不是真的死了？京城里传说纷纷，有的说建文帝并没有自杀，趁宫里起火混乱的时候，带着几个侍从太监从地道里逃出城外去了，别的地方传来的消息更离奇，说建文帝到了什么什么地方，后来还做了和尚，说得有鼻子有眼睛，使明成祖不得不怀疑。他想，如果建文帝真的没死，万一他在别的地方重新召集人马，用朝廷的名义讨伐他，岂不可怕。为了把这件事查个水落石出，他派了心腹大臣，到各地去秘密查问建文帝的下落，但是又不好公开宣布，就借口说是求神仙。这一找，就找了二三十年。

明成祖又想，建文帝会不会跑到海外去呢？那时候，我国的航海事业已经开始发展起来。明成祖心想，派人到海外去宣扬

5. Sanbao the Eunuch Explores the "Western Oceans"

After seizing the throne by force from his nephew, Emperor Chengzu of Ming was troubled by a nagging doubt about the real fate of Emperor Jianwen: his remains were never found amid the rubble of the torched palace. Did he die in the fire or not?

Rumors abounded in the capital. According to some, Emperor Jianwen did not commit suicide but had taken advantage of the chaos created by the fire to escape with a number of attendants and eunuchs through an underground tunnel that led out of the city. More bizarre stories came back to the capital alleging Emperor Jianwen had settled in this or that town and eventually became a monk. The specific details that accompanied the stories seemed so compelling that Emperor Chengzu's doubt was reinforced. He trembled at the thought that if Emperor Jianwen was still alive he might be regrouping somewhere in preparation for an attack against him in the name of legitimacy. In order to get to the bottom of the matter, Emperor Chengzu sent out trusted aides across the country on a secret mission to track down the missing emperor. Since the real purpose of the mission was best kept secret from the general public, the mission was officially described as one to scour the land for divinities. The search went on for nearly three decades.

It occurred to Emperor Chengzu that Emperor Jianwen might have fled overseas. China was then a nascent and rising naval power and Emperor Chengzu thought he would be killing two

国威，跟外国人做点生意，采购一些珠宝，顺便探听一下濠文帝的下落，岂不是一举两得。

这样，他就决定派一支队伍，出使国外。让谁来带这支队伍呢？当然非得是自己的心腹不可。他想到跟随他多年的宦官郑和，倒是个挺合适的人选。

郑和，原来姓马，小名叫三保，出生在云南一个回族家庭里。他的祖父、父亲都信奉伊斯兰教，还到麦加（伊斯兰教的主要圣地，在今沙特阿拉伯）去朝过圣。郑和小时候就从父亲那里听说过外国的一些情况。后来，他进燕王宫里当了太监，因为他聪明能干，得到明成祖的信任。这郑和的名字还是明成祖给他起的。但是民间把他的小名叫惯了，所以一直把他叫做“三保太监”，后来，有的书上也写成“三宝太监”。

公元1405年六月，明成祖正式派郑和为使者，带一支船队出使“西洋”。那时候，人们叫的“西洋”，并不是指欧洲大陆，而是指我国南海以西的海和沿海各地。郑和带的船队，一共有二万七千八百多人，除了兵士和水手外，还有技术人员、翻译、医生等。他们乘坐六十二艘大船，这种船长四十四丈，阔十八

birds with one stone by sending a fleet abroad with the combined mission of projecting the empire's power, trading with foreign nations, procuring some precious stones and trying to locate Emperor Jianwen.

Thus the decision was made to dispatch such a fleet. The next question was who should lead this mission. Clearly it had to be someone that enjoyed his total trust. His thoughts turned to Zheng He, a eunuch who had served at his side for many years. He would be an ideal candidate for the job.

Zheng He's name at birth was Ma He, yet he was nicknamed "Sanbao". Zheng was born to a Muslim family in Yunnan. His grandfather and father believed in Islam and had completed the pilgrimage to Mecca. Zheng He garnered snippets of information about other countries from his father from a young age. When he was taken to the household of the Prince of Yan and made a eunuch, his knowledge and ability earned him the trust of the future Emperor Chengzu. The honorific surname of Zheng was awarded by the emperor, but the nickname Sanbao stuck and he continued to be known among the people as "Eunuch Sanbao" and the appellation even found its way into some books.

In June 1405, Emperor Chengzu of Ming formally designated Zheng He envoy at the head of a fleet of ships bound for "the Western Oceans" or "the West". The "West" of that time did not refer to the European continent but rather to the seas and the states bordering those waters to the west of the South China Sea. Zheng He's fleet consisted of more than 27,800 crew members, including soldiers and sailors as well as technicians, interpreters and physicians. They traveled in sixty-two large ships that were 145 meters long and 60 meters wide—a rare size in those times.

丈，在当时是少见的。船队从苏州刘家河（今江苏太仓浏河）出发，经过福建沿海，浩浩荡荡，扬帆南下。

郑和第一次出海，先到了占城（在今越南南方），接着又到爪哇、旧港（在今印度尼西亚苏门答腊岛东南岸）、苏门答腊、刺加、古里、锡兰等国家。他带着大批金银财物，每到一个国家，先把明成祖的信递交国王，并且把带去的礼物送给他们，希望同他们友好交往。许多国家见郑和带了那么大的船队，态度友好，并不是来威吓他们，都热情地接待他。

郑和这一次出使，一直到第三年九月才回国。西洋各国国王趁郑和回国，也都派了使者带着礼物跟着他一起回访。在出使的路上，虽然遇到几次惊涛骇浪，但是船上有的是经验丰富的老水手，船队从没出过事。只是在船队回国、经过旧港的时候，却遇到了一件麻烦事。

旧港地方有个海盗头目，名叫陈祖义。他占据了一个海岛，纠集了一支海盗队伍，专门抢劫过往客商的财物。这回听到郑和船队带着大批宝物经过，分外眼红，就和同伙计议，表面上准备迎接，趁郑和不防备，就动手抢劫。

The impressive fleet sailed from Liujiahe in Suzhou, present-day Liuhe in Taicang of Jiangsu Province, and hugging the coast of Fujian, headed south.

Zheng He's first voyage included visits to Champa (in the south of modern Vietnam), followed by Java, Palembang (on the southeastern coast of modern Sumatra, Indonesia); Sumatra; Malacca; Calicut and Ceylon. When his treasure-laden fleet arrived in a kingdom, he would deliver a letter by Emperor Chengzu to the local king and offer gifts as a token of China's good will. He was warmly received in many kingdoms, which realized that Zheng He did not intend his awe-inspiring fleet to be an instrument of intimidation, but was friendly towards them.

Zheng He returned to China in September of the third year of his voyage through the "Western Oceans." He was accompanied by gift-bearing envoys sent on a return visit by the kings of lands along his routes of exploration. The voyage had not been without incident, and many fierce storms and high waves had been encountered. But the ships were manned by seasoned sailors who ensured that they weathered the storms without incident. As the returning fleet approached Palembang, however, it ran into trouble.

A man by the name of Chen Zuyi, who had installed himself on an island near Palembang, was the head of a gang of pirates who robbed passing merchants. Chen salivated at the news that the treasure-laden fleet of Zheng He was approaching. After some discussion with his co-conspirators, it was decided to feign a warm reception for Zheng He and wait for the moment of his lowered guard to raid the treasures.

这个计谋被当地人施进得得知，他偷偷地派人到船队告诉了郑和。

郑和心想，我手下有二万兵士，还怕你小小海盗？既然你要来偷袭，就非得给你点教训不可。他命令把大船散开，在旧港港口停泊下来。命令船上的兵士准备好火药、刀枪，严阵以待。

夜深的时候，海面上风平浪静，陈祖义带领一群海盗乘着几十艘小船直驶港口，准备偷袭。只听到郑和的坐船上一声火炮响，周围的大船都驶拢来，把陈祖义的海盗船围住。明军人多势大，早有准备，把陈祖义杀得大败。大船上的兵士丢下火把，把海盗船烧着了。陈祖义想逃也逃不了，只好乖乖地当了俘虏。

郑和把陈祖义捆绑了起来，押回中国。到了京城，向明成祖献上了俘虏。各国的使者也会见了明成祖，送上大批珍贵的礼物。明成祖见郑和把出使的任务完成得很出色，高兴得眉开眼笑。

后来，明成祖相信建文帝确实是死了，没有必要再去寻找。

However, local resident, Shi Jinqing, got word of the pirates' plan and secretly sent word to Zheng He, whose fleet was anchored offshore.

With his twenty thousand soldiers, Zheng He was not unduly disturbed by the planned attack of the pirates. Rather, he decided to teach them a lesson. Zheng He ordered the large galleons to disperse and weigh anchor in the port of Palenbang. The soldiers were told to be on battle alert, with gun powder, swords and other weapons at the ready.

When night fell, Chen Zuyi and his gang of pirates, riding in dozens of small crafts, sailed directly toward the port on a calm sea to carry out a sneak attack. Yet before they knew it, the large galleons surrounded them at the signal of a single cannon shot, fired from Zheng He's flag ship, hemming in the pirates' boats. As a result of their overwhelming numbers and their readiness, the Ming troops decimated Chen Zuyi's party. The soldiers on the large galleons hurled torches into the pirates' boats. As his boat burned, Chen Zuyi, realizing escape was no longer possible, allowed himself to be taken captive without resistance. Zheng He bound Chen Zuyi, and took him to China. In the capital, Zheng He presented Emperor Chengzu with Chen Zuyi and his fellow prisoners.

In an audience with Emperor Chengzu, the envoys of numerous kingdoms presented him with rare and precious gifts and the emperor's face glowed with genuine pleasure at the brilliant success of Zheng He's mission.

Emperor Chengzu was eventually convinced that Emperor Jianwen had indeed died and there was no longer a need to continue the search for him. The voyages overseas, however, offered many other benefits, notably the gain in his empire's

但是出使海外的事，既能提高国家的威望，又能促进跟西洋各国的贸易往来，好处很多。所以打那以后，一次又一次派郑和带领船队下西洋。从公元1405年到1433年的将近三十年里，郑和出海七次，前前后后一共到过印度洋沿海三十多个国家，最远到达非洲的木骨都束国（今索马里的摩加迪沙一带）。

到郑和第六次出使回国的那年，明成祖得病死了。他的儿子明仁宗朱高炽即位后，不到一年也死了。继承皇位的明宣宗朱瞻基，是一个八九岁的孩子，由祖母徐太后和三个老臣掌权。大臣们认为郑和出使七次，国家花费太大，到国外航行的事业就停了下来。

郑和的七次航行，表现了我国古代人民顽强的探索精神，也说明当时我国航海技术已经有很高的水平。通过郑和出使，促进了我国和亚非许多国家的经济文化交流和友好往来。直到现在，那些国家里还流传着三保太监的事迹。

prestige and the promotion of trade with countries to the west of his empire. So the voyages through the "Western Oceans" led by Zheng He continued. In the nearly three decades between 1405 and 1433, Zheng He led seven voyages that visited a total of more than thirty nations in the Indian Ocean, reaching as far as Mogadishu, in today's Somalia on the African coast.

In the year Zheng He returned from his sixth voyage, Emperor Chengzu died of illness. His son Zhu Gaochi, who succeeded him with the title of Emperor Renzong of Ming, died less than a year later. The next successor, Zhu Zhanji, who acceded to the throne as Emperor Xuanzong of Ming, was only eight or nine years old and real power was held by his grandmother Empress Dowager Xu and three senior, holdover ministers. The ministers believed that the seven voyages of Zheng He had proved too much of a financial burden to the state and China's maritime enterprise was stopped in its tracks.

Zheng He's seven voyages not only embodied the irrepressible exploratory spirit of China's ancient inhabitants, but also attested to the advanced state of China's ocean-going technology in the period of the Ming Dynasty. Zheng He's expeditions promoted friendship and economic and cultural exchanges with many countries in Asia and Africa. To this day, stories about the Chinese explorer-eunuch "Sanbao" still circulate in these countries.

6、于谦保卫北京

公元1436年，刚满九岁的太子朱祁镇即位，这就是明英宗。宦官王振当上司礼监，帮助明英宗批阅奏章。明英宗一味追求玩乐，根本不问国事。王振趁机把朝廷军政大权抓在手里。

这个时候，我国北方蒙古族的瓦剌（音lǎ）部强大起来。公元1449年，瓦剌首领也先率领瓦剌骑兵进攻大同。明英宗是个没主见的人，偏听王振的话，不管大臣劝谏，冒冒失失决定亲征。

结果，明朝五十万大军在土木堡（今河北怀来东）全线崩溃，王振送了命，明英宗也当了俘虏。消息传到北京，太后和皇后急得哭哭啼啼，从官里内库检出大量金银珍宝、绫罗绸缎，偷偷派太监带着财宝去寻找瓦剌军，想把英宗赎回来。结果，当然是毫无希望。

从土木堡逃出来的伤兵，断了手的，缺了腿的，陆续在北

6. Yu Qian Defends Beijing

In 1436 Zhu Qizhen, the nine-year-old crown prince, ascended the throne as Emperor Yingzong of Ming. The eunuch Wang Zhen, as Director of Ceremonies, helped Emperor Yingzong with the reading of memorandums and reports presented by ministers. In his wanton pursuit of pleasure Emperor Yingzong totally neglected the running of the state and Wang Zhen had a perfect opportunity to usurp civil and military power.

It was at this time the Oirats, a Mongol tribe, rose in strength. In 1449 the Oirat leader Esen Tayisi led a battalion to attack Datong. Emperor Yingzong, never known to have a mind of his own, was persuaded by Wang Zhen to take the rash decision to personally lead the counterattack over the objections of other ministers and advisers.

The result was the collapse of the 500,000 strong Ming army at Fort Tumu (east of modern-day Huailai in Hebei Province). In the battle, Wang Zhen lost his life and Emperor Yingzong was taken prisoner. When news of the defeat reached Beijing, the frightened empress dowager and the empress melted into tears. They secretly sent eunuchs with an impressive hoard of gold, silver, gems and silks picked from the private vaults of the imperial household to seek out the Oirat army and offer the treasures as ransom for the return of the emperor. It was all in vain.

Ming soldiers wounded in the battle of Fort Tumu began to appear in the streets of Beijing with their arms or legs missing—adding to popular unease and uncertainty about the fate of the

京街道出现了。京城里人心惶惶，谁也不知道皇帝下落怎样。再说，京城里留下的人马不多，瓦剌军来了怎么抵挡呢？

为了安定人心，皇太后宣布由郕王朱祁钰监国（就是代理皇帝的职权），并且召集大臣，商量怎么对付瓦剌。大臣们七嘴八舌，不知怎么办才好。大臣徐有贞说：“瓦剌兵强，怎么也抵挡不住。我考察天象，京城将遭到大难，不如逃到南方去，暂时避一下，再作打算。”

兵部侍郎于谦神情严肃地向皇太后和郕王说：“谁主张逃跑的，应该砍头。京城是国家的根本，如果朝廷一撤出，大势就完了。大家难道忘掉了南宋的教训吗？”

于谦的主张得到许多大臣的支持，太后决定叫于谦负责指挥军民守城。

于谦做过几任地方官，后来担任河南巡抚，王振专权的时候，因为于谦刚正不阿，得罪了王振，王振就指使同党诬告于谦，把于谦打进监牢，还判了死刑。河南、山西的地方官员和百

emperor. Besides, the inhabitants wondered, with the sharply reduced strength of the troops defending the capital, how could we defend ourselves against an invasion by the Oirat army?

In order to calm the public's fears, the empress dowager announced that Zhu Qiyu, the Prince of Cheng, would henceforth act as regent. She called the top officials together to discuss ways to deal with the Oirats. There was much talk, but little result—good ideas were in short supply.

"There's no way we could withstand attack by the superior force of the Oirats," the minister Xu Youzhen said. "My astronomical observations tell me a major catastrophe is looming over the capital. It would be wise to retreat to the south to sit out the disaster before considering our future options."

Yu Qian, a vice-minister of the Ministry of War, said with a serious expression to the empress dowager and the Prince of Cheng, "Anyone advocating running away should be decapitated. The capital is a central symbol of the state. If the central government pulls out from the capital, it will spell the end of the state. Have we forgotten the lesson of the Song Dynasty?"

Yu Qian's view had majority support among the ministers, thus the empress dowager put Yu Qian in charge of the defense of the capital.

Yu Qian had risen through the ranks of local bureaucracy to the position of "Grand Coordinator" (official sent by the central government to supervise provincial administration) of Henan. When the power of Wang Zhen was at its zenith, the integrity and independence of Yu Qian had caused him to conflict with Wang Zhen, who encouraged his partisans to denounce Yu Qian to the government on a trumped-up charge, leading to his

姓听到于谦被诬陷的消息，成千上万的人联名向明英宗请愿，要求释放于谦。王振一伙一看众怒难犯，又抓不住于谦什么把柄，只好释放了于谦，恢复了他的原职，后来，于谦又被调到北京担任兵部侍郎。

这一回，在京城面临危急的时刻，于谦毅然担负起守城的重任。他一面加紧调兵遣将，加强京城和附近关口的防御兵力，一面整顿内部，逮捕了一批瓦剌军的奸细。

有一天，监国的郕王朱祁钰上朝，大臣们纷纷要求宣布王振罪状。朱祁钰不敢作主。有个宦官马顺，是王振的同党，见大臣们不肯退朝，吆喝着想把大臣赶跑。这下激怒了大臣。有个大臣冲上去揪住马顺，大伙赶上来，一阵拳打脚踢，就把马顺揍死了。

朱祁钰见到朝堂大乱，想躲进内宫，于谦拦住他说：“王振

incarceration and death sentence. When local officials and the common people of Henan and Shanxi learned of his being framed, tens of thousands of them joined forces to sign a petition to Emperor Yingzong asking for Yu Qian's release. Confronted by popular wrath and lacking any substantiating evidence against Yu Qian, Wang Zhen saw no alternative but to free Yu Qian and reinstate him. Yu Qian was eventually transferred to Beijing as vice-minister of war.

At this moment of crisis, Yu Qian bravely took on the onerous responsibility of defending the capital. He redeployed troops and commanders to strengthen the defense of the city and reinforce strategic positions. He simultaneously launched a cleanup operation, leading to the arrest of a number of traitors spying for the Qirat army.

One day, at an assembly presided over by Zhu Qiyu, the Prince of Cheng, in his capacity as Regent, the ministers clamored for a public airing of the crimes of Wang Zhen. Zhu Qiyu did not want to take responsibility for such a decision. Ma Shun, a eunuch who was a close associate of Wang Zhen, tried by bluff and bluster to disperse the ministers who showed little inclination of leaving without their request being satisfied. Yet, he had not reckoned on the angry reaction of the ministers, who swarmed around Ma Shun and began to beat him with fists and feet. Ma Shun did not survive the "mob" attack.

When Zhu Qiyu tried to leave the riotous scene by ensconcing himself in the inner quarters of the palace, Yu Qian blocked his exit.

"Wang Zhen is the main culprit responsible for the recent defeat," he told Zhu Qiyu. "Public opinion will not be appeased unless he is held responsible and punishment administered

是这次战争失败的罪魁祸首，不惩办不能平民愤。陛下只要宣布王振罪状，大臣们就心安了。”

朱祁钰听了于谦的话，下令抄了王振的家，惩办了一些王振的同党，人心渐渐安定下来。

瓦剌首领也先俘虏了明英宗，没把他杀死，却挟持着英宗当人质，不断骚扰边境。看来，京城里没有皇帝不好办。于谦等大臣请太后正式宣布让朱祁钰做皇帝，被俘虏的明英宗改称太上皇。朱祁钰这才即位称帝，这就是明代宗（又叫景帝）。

也先知道明朝决心抵抗瓦剌，就以送明英宗回朝为借口，大举进犯北京。

这一年十月，瓦剌军很快打到北京城下，在西直门外扎下营寨。于谦立刻召集将领商量对策。大将石亨认为明军兵力弱，主张把军队撤进城里，然后把各道城门关闭起来防守。日子一久，也许瓦剌会自动退兵。

于谦说：“敌人这样嚣张，如果我们向他们示弱，只会助长他们的气焰。我们一定要主动出兵，给他们一个迎头痛击。”接着，他分派将领带兵出城，在京城九门外摆开阵势。

accordingly. The ministers will be satisfied with a public acknowledgment by His Majesty of the crime of Wang Zhen."

Acquiescing to this advice of Yu Qian, Zhu Qiyu ordered the confiscation of all the assets of the family of Wang Zhen and the prosecution and punishment of Wang Zhen's partisans. These measures had a calming effect on public opinion.

After capturing Emperor Yingzong, Esen Khan, the Oirat leader, did not kill him but rather used him as a hostage while continuing to attack the Ming borders. Realizing the awkwardness of governing without an emperor, Yu Qian and other ministers petitioned the empress dowager to formally announce the enthronement of Zhu Qiyu and to change the title of Emperor Yingzong in captivity to "Super-Emperor." Zhu Qiyu finally ascended to the throne with the title of Emperor Daizong of Ming (also known as Emperor Jingdi).

Realizing the determination of the Ming Dynasty to resist the Oirats, Esen Khan launched a massive attack against Beijing on the pretext of restoring Emperor Yingzong to the throne.

In October of that year, the Oirat army easily fought its way to Beijing and camped outside Xizhi Gate. Yu Qian called a council of war. Shi Heng, an army general, believed that given the inferior strength of the Ming army it would be prudent to pull back the troops inside the city walls and close all of the city gates. The Oirat army just might decide to go away of its own accord when the siege dragged on for too long.

Yu Qian observed, "The enemy is already overconfident. Any show of weakness on our part would only fuel their arrogance. We must ride out to deliver a decisive blow."

Thereupon he deployed his commanders to lead their troops

于谦在城外把各路人马布置好后，他亲自率领一支人马驻守在德胜门外，叫城里的守将把城门全部关闭起来，表示有进无退的决心。并且下了一道军令：将领上阵，丢了队伍带头后退的，就斩将领；兵士不听将领指挥，临阵脱逃的，由后队将士督斩。

将士们被于谦勇敢坚定的精神感动了，士气振奋，斗志昂扬，下决心跟瓦剌军拼死战斗，保卫北京。

这时候，各地的明军接到朝廷的命令，也陆续开到北京支援。城外的明军增加到二十二万人。

明军声势浩大，戒备森严，也先发动几次进攻，都遭到明军奋勇阻击。城外的百姓也配合明军，跳上屋顶墙头，用砖瓦投掷敌人。经过五天的激战，瓦剌军死伤惨重。

也先遭到严重损失，又怕退路被明军截断，不敢再战，就带着明英宗和残兵败将撤退。于谦等明英宗去远了，就用火炮轰击，又杀伤了一批瓦剌兵。北京城保卫战，取得了辉煌的胜利。

outside the nine gates and get into battle formation.

After making these deployments, Yu Qian personally led a contingent out of the city to guard Desheng Gate and ordered all gates closed—demonstrating he had committed himself to conquer or perish. Yu Qian gave orders that any commander found to abandon his troops and lead a retreat would be executed, and any soldier who deserted against orders would be executed by troops that followed.

The troops were inspired by the courage and determination of Yu Qian and vowed with heightened morale and will to battle the Oirat army to their last breath in order to defend Beijing.

Meanwhile, Ming troops stationed in other parts of the land had answered the government's call and arrived near Beijing to help allay the siege. The Ming troops outside the city now swelled to 220,000.

The now considerably enlarged Ming army offered a formidable resistance and courageously repelled repeated offensives by Esen Khan. The civilian inhabitants outside the city walls worked hand in hand with the Ming troops, climbing on roofs and enclosure walls to hurl bricks and tiles at the enemy soldiers. In five days of pitched battle, the Oirat army suffered heavy casualties.

Having incurred heavy losses and afraid that his route of retreat could be cut off by the Ming army, Esen Khan lost his resolve for continued fighting and pulled back with Emperor Yingzong of Ming and his remnant troops. When he was sure Emperor Yingzong of Ming was out of range, Yu Qian ordered an attack by cannons, laying low yet more of the Oirat soldiers. The defense of Beijing was a brilliant success.

于谦立了大功，受到北京军民的爱戴。明代宗十分敬重他。于谦家的房屋简陋，只能遮蔽风雨，明代宗要给他造一座府第，于谦推辞了。他说：“现在正是国难当头的时候，怎么能贪图享受呢？”

他先失败后，知道扣住明英宗也没有用处，就把明英宗放回北京。

于谦一心保卫国家，但是那个在北京危急的日子里主张逃跑的徐有贞，还有被于谦责备过的大将石亨，都又对他怀恨在心，在暗地里想法报复。

英宗回北京后过了七年，也就是公元1457年，明代宗生了一场大病，徐有贞、石亨跟宦官勾结起来，带兵闯进皇宫，迎明英宗朱祁镇复位。历史上把这件事称作“夺门之变”。没多久，明代宗就死了。

明英宗对于谦在他被俘流亡的时候，帮他弟弟即位称帝，心里本来有气，再加上徐有贞、石亨一伙在他面前说了不少诬陷的话，竟下了狠心，给于谦加上个“谋反”的罪名，把于谦杀害了。

The bulk of the credit for this important victory went to Yu Qian, whose popularity among the military and the civilian population grew. Emperor Daizong of Ming had great respect for him and wanted to build a proper residence for him to replace his family's modest house, which merely served as a shelter against the elements and not much more. But Yu Qian declined, saying, "How can I think of living in comfort when the country is in great danger?"

After his latest defeat, Esen Khan knew that detaining Emperor Yingzong no longer served a useful purpose, so he freed him to return to Beijing.

While Yu Qian dedicated his life to the defense of the country, Xu Youzhen, who advocated fleeing the capital when Beijing was in danger of falling, and General Shi Heng, who was once berated by Yu Qian, nursed their resentment against him and quietly plotted their revenge.

In 1457, seven years after the return of Emperor Yingzong to Beijing, Emperor Daizong fell seriously ill. Xu Youzhen and Shi Heng saw their opportunity. In collusion with some eunuchs they forced their way into the palace and restored Emperor Yingzong (Zhu Qizhen) to the throne. This is known to history as the "Break-in Incident." Emperor Daizong died shortly afterwards.

Following his restoration to the throne, Emperor Yingzong, who had long harbored a grudge against Yu Qian for helping his younger brother accede to the throne during his own captivity, was further inflamed by Xu Youzhen and Shi Heng's constant slander of Yu Qian. Thus he cold-bloodedly had Yu Qian killed on a charge of "seditious intent."

7、海瑞刚正不阿

1522年，朱厚熜（音cōng）继承皇位，这就是明世宗。明世宗刚即位的时候，在政治上采取一些改良措施，像限制宦官权力、整顿税收等等。但是后来迷信道教，在宫内设坛求仙，渐渐不大过问朝政。大学士严嵩（音sōng）因为善于起草祭神的文书，逐步取得了内阁首辅（相当于宰相）的地位。他当上首辅后，和他儿子严世蕃一起，结党营私，贪赃枉法，干尽坏事。

在严嵩掌权的日子里，别说是严家父子，就是他们手下的同党，也没有一个不是依官仗势，作威作福的。上到朝廷大臣，下至地方官吏，谁都让他们几分。

可是在浙江淳安县里，有一个小小知县，却能够秉公办事，对严嵩下面同党，一点不讲情面。他的名字叫海瑞。

海瑞是广东琼山人。他从小死了父亲，靠母亲抚养长大。家

7. Hai Rui, Man of Integrity and Independence

In 1522 Zhu Houcong ascended the throne as Emperor Shizong of Ming. In the period immediately following his accession, Emperor Shizong introduced some political reforms, including the curbing of eunuch power and tax reforms. But he later became infatuated with Taoism and increasingly engrossed in the invocation of deities and spirits on altars installed in his palace. He began neglecting the running of state. Grand Secretary Yan Song was so adept at drafting the prayers used in these Taoist rituals that he was eventually elevated to Senior Grand Secretary of the Grand Secretariat (equivalent in rank to Grand Councilor). In this position of Senior Grand Secretary, he and his son Yan Shifan built a clique around themselves to obtain private gain through corruption, larceny, shady dealings and unscrupulous deeds.

At the height of Yan Song's power, even his followers rode roughshod over the general public on account of their connections in high places, not to mention with Yan Song and his son themselves. Everyone, from ministers at the imperial court to local officials, had to show deference to them.

But an obscure county magistrate in Chun'an County of Zhejiang was an impartial judge and showed no special consideration for Yan Song's partisans. His name was Hai Rui.

Hai Rui was a native of Qiongzhan of Guangdong. His father died when he was a child and he was raised by his mother in

里生活十分贫苦。他二十多岁中了举人后，做过县里的学堂教谕，教育学生十分严格认真。不久，上司把他调到浙江淳安做知县。过去，县里的官吏审理案件，大多是接受贿赂，胡乱定案的。海瑞到了淳安，认真审理积案。不管什么疑难案件，到了海瑞手里，都一件件调查得水落石出，从不冤枉好人。当地百姓都称他是“青天”。

海瑞的顶头上司浙江总督胡宗宪，是严嵩的同党，他仗着有后台，到处敲诈勒索，谁敢不顺他心，就该谁倒霉。

有一次，胡宗宪的儿子带了一大批随从经过淳安，住在县里的官驿里。要是换了别的县份，官吏见到总督大人的公子，奉承都来不及。可是在淳安县，海瑞立下一条规矩，不管大官贵戚，一律按普通客人招待。

胡宗宪的儿子，平时养尊处优惯了，看到驿吏送上来的饭菜，认为是有意怠慢他，气得掀了饭桌子，喝令随从，把驿吏捆绑起来，倒吊在梁上。

驿里的差役赶快报告海瑞。海瑞知道胡公子招摇过境，本

poverty. After obtaining his *ju ren* degree in the provincial civil service recruitment examination in his twenties, he became a school instructor in his county. He was a conscientious and strict teacher. Soon he was promoted to the position of county magistrate of Chun'an of Zhejiang. Most of his predecessors decided cases based on the bribes they received. When Hai Rui took office in Chun'an, he carefully reviewed the outstanding cases. Regardless of the complexity of the case, once it was taken up by Hai Rui, it would invariably be solved and there was never an innocent man wrongfully convicted. The local inhabitants took to calling him *Qing Tian* or "blue sky", a term reserved in ancient China for incorruptible officials.

Hai Rui's boss, Hu Zongxian, Governor of Zhejiang, was Yan Song's follower and his connections in high places emboldened him to enrich himself by extorting money and exacting bribes. He who dared to ruffle Hu Zongxian's feathers did so at his own peril.

On one occasion, one of Hu Zongxian's sons passed through Chun'an with a large entourage and stayed at the government guesthouse. In any other county, officials would scramble to flatter and fawn on the son of a governor but in Chun'an County Hai Rui had issued a directive that all high officials and their family members were to be treated like any other guests.

When Hu Zongxian's son, accustomed to a life of luxury and pleasure, saw the kind of food served to him at the guesthouse, he believed it was a deliberate slight. In anger he tipped the table over and told his bodyguards to hogtie the staff member who served the meal and hoist him up on a beam, upside down.

Other staff immediately reported the incident to Hai Rui. The county magistrate was already annoyed by the fanfare with which

来已经感到厌烦，现在竟吊打起驿吏来，就觉得非管不可了。

海瑞听完差役的报告，装作镇静地说：“总督是个清廉的大臣。他早有吩咐，要各县招待过往官吏，不得铺张浪费。现在来的那个花花公子，排场阔绰，态度骄横，不会是胡大人的公子。一定是什么地方的坏人冒充公子，到本县来招摇撞骗的。”

说着，他立刻带了一大批差役赶到驿馆，把胡宗宪儿子和他的随从统统抓了起来，带回县衙审讯。一开始，那个胡公子仗着父亲的官势，暴跳如雷，但海瑞一口咬定他是假冒公子，还说要把他重办，他才泄了气。海瑞又从他的行装里，搜出几千两银子，统统没收充公，还把他狠狠教训一顿，撵出县境。

等胡公子回到杭州向他父亲哭诉的时候，海瑞的报告也已经送到总督衙门，说有人冒充公子，非法吊打驿吏。胡宗宪明知他儿子吃了大亏，但是海瑞信里没牵连到他，如果把这件事声张起来，反而失了自己的体面，就只好打落门牙往肚子里咽了。

过了不久，又有一个京里派出的御史駉懋孳（駉音yōn，懋

Master Hu arrived in the county; his brazenness in hoisting up a county employee was the final straw that compelled his intervention.

After hearing the report of the staff, Hai Rui said with apparent calm, "The governor is a squeaky clean high official and has instructed all the counties in his jurisdiction to eschew extravagance in receiving officials passing through town. That flamboyant playboy flaunting a high style and arrogant manners could not possibly be Governor Hu's son. This character must be a crook passing off as his son to con us."

Thereupon he took a large group of bailiffs with him to the guesthouse and had Hu Zongxian's son and his entire entourage rounded up and taken to the county house to be questioned. In the beginning, Master Hu was still jumping up and down with fury, his ego inflated by the high position of his father. But when Hai Rui insisted that he was a fake and threatened to mete out a severe penalty, he became crestfallen. Hai Rui confiscated the several thousand taels of silver found in his suitcase and ran him out of the county after haranguing him about proper behavior.

By the time Master Hu returned to Hangzhou to tearfully complain before his father, Hai Rui's report on the case had been delivered to the governor's office, detailing how a fake Master Hu hoisted up a county official and beat him up. Hu Zongxiang knew his son had received unfair treatment, but Hai Rui's report did not implicate the governor and if he made a fuss about the matter, it was he who would lose face. So he decided to "swallow the front tooth that was knocked loose" or to grin and bear it.

On another occasion Yan Maoqing, a censor dispatched by the central government, went on an official inspection tour of Zhejiang

音 mào) 被派到浙江视察。鄢懋卿是严嵩的干儿子，敲诈勒索的手段更狠。他到一个地方，地方官吏要是不“孝敬”他一笔大钱，他是不肯放过的。各地官吏听到鄢懋卿要来视察的消息，都犯了愁。但是鄢懋卿偏又要装出一副奉公守法的样子，他通知各地，说他向来喜欢简单朴素，不受奉迎。

海瑞听说鄢懋卿要到淳安，给鄢懋卿送了一封信去，信里说：“我们接到通知，要我们招待从简。可是据我们得知，您每到一个地方都是大摆筵席，花天酒地。这就叫我们为难啦！要按通知办事，就怕怠慢了您；要是像别地方一样铺张，只怕违背您的意思。请问该怎么办才好。”

鄢懋卿看到这封信揭了他的底，直恼得咬牙切齿。但是他早听说海瑞是个铁面无私的硬汉，又知道胡宗宪的儿子刚在淳安吃过大亏，有点害怕，就临时改变主意，绕过淳安，到别处去了。

为了这件事，鄢懋卿对海瑞怀恨在心，后来，指使他的同党在明世宗面前狠狠告了海瑞一状，海瑞终于被撤了淳安知县的职务。

He was Yan Song's adopted son and had an insatiable appetite for bribes. Wherever he went, local officials had to make large "donations" to him, or else. News of Yan Maoqing's coming inspection tour through Zhejiang understandably cast a shadow of gloom over the local officialdom. But Yan Maoqing had a perverse habit of keeping up the appearance of law-abiding propriety; he notified the counties on his itinerary that he was a stickler for simplicity and frugality and disliked sycophancy and flattery.

When he learned of Yan Maoqing's impending visit to Chun'an, Hai Rui wrote a letter to him.

"We have received your notification that you prefer simple and frugal receptions," he wrote. "But to our knowledge, wherever you go you are wined and dined at sumptuous banquets. We are in a quandary. If we act according to your notification, we worry that it might appear to be a slight to you; on the other hand if we do as other counties do and throw lavish parties in your honor, we fear going against your exhortation to frugality. Please advise as to proper behavior."

Yan Maoqing read the letter with gnashed teeth because it exposed him and put him on the spot. But he had heard about the strict impartiality of the tough judge Hai Rui, and he also knew how Hu Zongxian's son was given his comeuppance in Chun'an. Nervous about his encounter with Hai Rui, Yan Maoqing changed his plans and bypassed Chun'an.

Yan Maoqing bore a grudge against Hai Rui for this incident and later instigated his partisans to badmouth Hai Rui before Emperor Shizong of Ming, making serious accusations against him. As a result, Hai Rui was stripped of his functions as county magistrate of Chun'an.

后来严嵩倒了台，鄒應龍也被充军到外地，海瑞恢复了官职，又被调到京城。

海瑞到了京城，对明世宗的昏庸和朝廷的腐败情况，见得更多了。那时候，明世宗已经有二十多年没有上朝，他躲在宫里一个劲儿跟一些道士们鬼混。一些朝臣谁也不敢说话。海瑞虽然官职不大，却大胆写一道奏章向明世宗直谏。他把明王朝造成的腐败现象痛痛快快地揭露出来。他在奏章上写道：“现在吏贪官横，民不聊生。天下的老百姓对陛下早就不满了。”

海瑞把这道奏章送上去以后，自己估计会触犯明世宗，可能保不住性命。回家的路上，顺道买了一口棺材。他的妻子和儿子看到全吓呆了。海瑞把这件事告诉了亲人们，并且把他死后的事一件件交代好，把家里的仆人也都打发走了，准备随时被捕处死。

Eventually, Yan Song fell into disgrace and Yan Maoqing was exiled to garrison duty. Hai Rui was duly reinstated and transferred to the capital.

In the capital, Hai Rui had the opportunity to see up close the absurdity of Emperor Shizong and the corruption endemic in the central government. By that time, Emperor Shizong had absented himself from imperial audiences for more than two decades. He whiled away the time with fellow Taoists in the confines of his palace. The high-ranking ministers were afraid to say anything to the emperor but the low-ranking Hai Rui had the nerve to write a candid memorandum to the emperor, making a scathing critique of the causes of official corruption.

"The people's misery is made worse by the corrupt officials and arrogant bureaucrats," he wrote. "Popular discontent directed at His Majesty has simmered for a long time now."

After submitting the memo, Hai Rui believed it would incur the wrath of the emperor and his life was likely in the balance. On his way home he picked out a coffin. His wife and children were spooked by the sight of the coffin. Hai Rui explained the whole thing to his family and made meticulous arrangements in case of his death. He also dismissed all his servants in anticipation of his arrest and execution.

果然，海瑞这道奏章在朝廷引起了一场轰动。明世宗看了，又气又恨，把奏章扔在地上，跟左右侍从说：“快把这个人抓起来，别让他跑了！”

旁边有个宦官早就听到海瑞的名声，跟明世宗说：“这个人是个出名的书呆子，他早知道触犯了陛下活不成，把后事都安排了。我看他是不会逃走的。”

后来，明世宗还是下命令把海瑞抓了起来，交给锦衣卫严刑拷问，直到明世宗死去，海瑞才得到释放。

His memorandum, as foreseen by him, caused a big stir at the court. Emperor Shizong became furious when he read it and, throwing it on the floor said to his attendants, "Arrest this man immediately and don't let him slip away!"

A eunuch at his side, who had long heard of Hai Rui, told Emperor Shizong, "Everyone knows this man is a learned person. He knows he will not live because he has offended His Majesty and has made all the arrangements in case of his death. I don't think he will run away."

Emperor Shizong had Hai Rui arrested and turned over to the "Embroidered Coats" (secret service), where he underwent questioning under torture. It was only after the death of Emperor Shizong of Ming that Hai Rui regained his freedom.

8、戚继光驱逐倭寇

明世宗的时候，有一批日本的海盗经常在我国东南沿海一带骚扰。他们和中国的土豪、奸商勾结，到处抢掠财物，杀害百姓，闹得沿海不得安宁。历史上把这种海盗叫做“倭寇”。

公元1553年，在汉奸汪直、徐海的勾结下，倭寇集结了几百艘海船，在浙江、江苏沿海登陆，分成许多小股，抢掠了几十个城市。沿海的官吏和兵士不敢抵抗，见了倭寇就逃。

倭寇侵略越来越严重，使躲在深宫里的明世宗也不得不发愁了，叫严嵩想法子对付。严嵩的同党赵文华想出一个主意，说要解决倭寇侵犯，只有向东海祷告，求海神爷保佑。明世宗居然相信赵文华的鬼话，叫他到浙江去祷告海神。

后来，朝廷派了个熟悉沿海防务的老将俞大猷(yóu)去抵抗。俞大猷一到浙江，就打了几个胜仗。但是不久，浙江总督张

8. Qi Jiguang Gets Rid of the *Wo Kou*

The reign of Emperor Shizong of Ming was plagued by raids of Japanese pirates along China's southeastern coast. These Japanese pirates worked in cahoots with Chinese local tyrants and unscrupulous businessmen to plunder the coastal communities, wreaking havoc on life and property, and casting a pall of insecurity and fear along the coast. These Japanese pirates are known to Chinese history as *wo kou*.

In 1553, the Japanese pirates, supported by the Chinese collaborationists Wang Zhi and Xu Hai, assembled a fleet of several hundred sea-going boats and landed on the coast of Zhejiang and Jiangsu. They then fanned out in small bands to sack dozens of cities and towns. Government officials and troops did not dare to put up a resistance, fleeing at the sight of Japanese pirates.

As the problem of the *wo kou* incursions got worse, even Emperor Shizong of Ming, snugly ensconced in his palace, began to worry. He instructed Yan Song to think of a way to deal with it. Yan Song's supporter Zhao Wenhua offered an idea: the only way to stop the *wo kou* invasions, he believed, was to pray to the sea god in the East China Sea for protection. The credulous Emperor Shizong accepted this nonsensical strategy of Zhao Wenhua's and sent him to Zhejiang to pray to the sea god.

The central government later dispatched Yu Dayou, a veteran general who had had long experience with coastal defenses, to

经被赵文华陷害，俞大猷也被牵连坐了牢。沿海的防务没人指挥，倭寇的活动又猖獗起来。朝廷把山东的将领戚继光调到浙江，才扭转了这个局面。

戚继光是我国历史上著名的民族英雄。他到了浙江，先检阅那儿的军队，发现那些军队纪律松散，根本不能够打仗，就决心另外招募新军。他一发出招兵命令，马上有一批吃够倭寇苦的农民、矿工自愿参军，还有一些愿意抗倭的地主武装也参加了进来。戚继光组织的新军很快发展到四千人。

戚继光是个精通兵法的将领，他懂得兵士不经过严格训练是不能上阵的。他根据南方沼泽地区的特点，研究了阵法，亲自教兵士使用各种长短武器。经过他严格训练，这支新军的战斗力特别强，“戚家军”的名气就在远近传开了。

过了几年，倭寇又袭击台州（今浙江临海）一带，戚继光率领新军赶到台州。倭寇在哪里骚扰，他们就打到哪里。那些乱七八糟的海盗队伍，哪儿是戚家军的对手，交锋了九次，戚

fight the *wo kou*. He had initial success, winning a series of battles. But with Zhang Jing, the governor of Zhejiang, out of power as a result of being framed by the scheming Zhao Wenhua, Yu Dayou was implicated and thrown in jail. Taking advantage of the vacuum in coastal defenses, the *wo kou* came back with a vengeance. Only after deploying General Qi Jiguang from Shandong to Zhejiang, was the central government able to turn the critical situation around.

Qi Jiguang is a well-known national hero in Chinese history. Once taking up his post in Zhejiang, he discovered after a review of the local troops that they suffered from lax discipline and their battle-worthiness was next to naught. He concluded he must recruit fresh blood. As soon as the recruitment campaign was announced, a large number of peasants and miners fed up with the *wo kou*'s ravages, enlisted. Some militias organized by landowners inclined to resist the *wo kou* also joined up. Soon the new army of Qi Jiguang swelled to 4,000 men.

A commander well versed in the art of war, Qi Jiguang understood that troops could not be sent into battle without going through rigorous training. He carefully devised battle formations adapted to the marshlands characteristic of the southern geography and took a personal interest in training his troops in the use of all types of weaponry. This new army was forged into a strong force with impressive fighting capabilities and the fame of this "Qi Army" spread far and wide.

A number of years later when the *wo kou* raided the Taizhou area (modern Linhai of Zhejiang Province), Qi Jiguang marched his new army to Taizhou and hounded the marauding *wo kou* wherever they went. The ragtag hordes of pirates were naturally no match

家军一次次都取得胜利。最后，倭寇在陆地上呆不住，被迫逃到海船上。戚继光又用大炮轰击。倭寇的船起了火，大批倭兵被烧死或掉到海里淹死，留在岸上的也只得乖乖投降。

倭寇见到浙江防守严密，不敢再侵犯。第二年，他们又到福建沿海骚扰。一路倭寇从温州往南，占据了宁德；另一路倭寇从广东往北，盘踞在牛田。两路敌人互相声援，声势很大。福州的守将抵挡不了，向朝廷告急。朝廷又派戚继光援救。戚继光带了新军赶到宁德，打听到敌人的巢穴在宁德城十里外的横屿岛。那儿四面是水，地形险要。倭寇在那儿扎了大营盘踞，当地明军也不敢去攻打他们。

戚继光亲自调查了横屿岛的地形，知道那条水道既不宽，又不深。当天晚上潮落的时候，戚继光命令兵士每人随身带一捆干草，到了横屿对岸，把干草扔在水里。几千捆干草扔在一起，居然铺出了一条路来。戚家军兵士踏着干草铺成的路，神不知鬼不觉地插进倭寇大营。经过一场激烈战斗，盘踞在岛上的二千多个倭寇全部被歼灭。

for the Qi Army, which engaged them in battle nine times and came out the victor in every single one. No longer able to survive on land, the *wo kou* were forced to flee to the safety of their ships, which were subjected to bombardments by the cannons of Qi Jiguang. As the ships caught fire, large numbers of *wo kou* were burned to death or fell into the sea and drowned. Those who had not made it to their ships surrendered without a fight.

The strengthened defenses of Zhejiang deterred the *wo kou* from further incursions. The following year they moved their looting operations south to the Fujian sea coast. One band of *wo kou* went south from Wenzhou to take control of Ningde; another horde moved north from Guangdong to operate in the Niutian area. The two strands of bandits in mutual support became a formidable force that threatened to overwhelm the generals defending Fuzhou. When the central government received their urgent calls for help, it sent Qi Jiguang to the rescue. Arriving in Ningde at the head of his new army, Qi Jiguang discovered the enemy's lair was on Hengyu Island, ten *li* from the city of Ningde. Protected by the water surrounding them and inaccessible terrain, the *wo kou* set up camp on the island, in the secure knowledge that the local Ming troops would not venture there.

Qi Jiguang personally surveyed the topography of Hengyu Island and its surrounding area and found that the waterway was not as wide or as deep as feared. That evening at low tide, Qi Jiguang ordered his troops to each carry a bundle of straw and throw it into the water. Thousands of sheaves of straw formed a pathway across the waterway, on which the Qi troops were able to sneak into the *wo kou* camp without being detected. After a fierce battle, the more than two thousand *wo kou* on the island were killed off.

戚家军攻下横屿，立刻又进兵牛田。到了牛田附近，戚继光传出命令，说：“远路进军，人马疲劳，先就地休整再说。”

这些话很快传到敌人那里。牛田的倭寇真的相信戚家军暂时停止进攻，防备也就松懈下来。就在当天晚上，戚继光下令向牛田发起总攻击。倭兵毫无准备，匆促应战，禁不住戚家军猛攻猛冲，纷纷败退。倭寇头目率领残兵逃到兴化，戚家军又连夜跟踪追击，一连攻下了敌人六十多个营寨，消灭了溃逃的敌人。到天色发白的时候，戚家军进兴化城。城里的百姓才知道附近的倭寇已被戚家军消灭。大家兴高采烈，纷纷杀牛带酒，到军营来慰劳。

第二年，倭寇又侵犯福建，攻下兴化。这时候，俞大猷已经复职。朝廷派俞大猷为福建总兵，戚继光为副总兵。两个抗倭名将一起，大败倭寇，收复兴化。公元1565年，俞、戚两军再次配合，大败倭寇。到这时候，横行几十年的倭寇被基本肃清了。

After taking Hengyu Island, the Qi Army went on to march to Niutian. As it approached its destination, Qi Jiguang issued the order: "It has been a long march and both men and horses are fatigued. We will stop here to recuperate."

News of this order soon made its way to the enemy camp. The *wo kou* in Niutian, believing that the Qi Army was temporarily halting its advance, relaxed their vigilance. That night Qi Jiguang ordered an all-out attack against Niutian. The *wo kou*, caught totally off guard, put up a haphazard fight but were quickly beaten back by the strong offensive of the Qi Army. The leaders of the *wo kou* fled to Xinghua with their remnant troops. The Qi Army tracked them through the night and destroyed more than sixty enemy encampments, eliminating the enemy soldiers in flight. When day broke, the Qi Army entered the city of Xinghua. It was then that the city inhabitants learned for the first time the *wo kou* had been wiped out by the Qi Army. Buoyed by the good news, they feted the troops with freshly butchered steers and wine.

The following year, the *wo kou* again attacked Fujian and recaptured Xinghua. By that time Yu Dayou had been reinstated and the central government appointed him as Regional Commander of Fujian and Qi Jiguang as deputy Regional Commander. Working together, these two legendary figures in the fight against the *wo kou* successfully routed the *wo kou* and recovered Xinghua. In 1565 the two generals dealt another, fatal blow to the *wo kou* in a joint operation. The coastal communities were finally rid of the *wo kou* that had plagued them for decades.

9、李时珍上山采药

明世宗即位四十几年，尽情享乐，但是他又担心自己一天天衰老下去，有朝一日死掉，快活日子就过不下去。于是，他就千方百计寻找一种长生不老的药方。

公元1556年，朝廷下令各地官吏推荐名医。当时封在武昌的楚王，把正在王府里的医生李时珍推荐给太医院。

李时珍是蕲州（今湖北蕲春，蕲音qí）人。他的祖父、父亲都当过医生。父亲李言闻对药草很有研究，李时珍从小受父亲的影响，常常跟小伙伴一起上山采集各种药草。日子一长，他能认得各种草木的名称，还能知道什么草能治什么病。他的医药知识渐渐丰富起来。

但是，在那个日子里，做一个普通医生是被上层社会看不起的。李言闻自己是医生，却要李时珍读书应科举考试。李时珍在父亲督促下，在十四岁那年考中秀才，但是以后参加举人

9. Li Shizhen Scours Mountains for Medicinal Herbs

Life was filled with pleasures for Emperor Shizong in his more than forty years on the throne, but he began to worry that physical decline and his eventual death would cut short his happy days. He embarked therefore on a desperate search for a recipe for longevity and immortality.

In 1556, the central government instructed all local governments to recommend their best doctors of medicine. The Prince of Chu, who had his fiefdom in Wuchang, recommended Li Shizhen, his own resident doctor, to the *Tai Yi Yuan* or Imperial Medical Administration.

Li Shizhen was from Qizhou, present-day Qichun of Hubei Province. His grandfather and his father were both doctors. His father, Li Yanwen, who had an excellent knowledge of medicinal herbs, had a great influence over the young Li Shizhen, who would make frequent outings into the mountains with other children to collect a wide variety of herbs. With time, he knew not only the names of the herbs but their uses in treating various diseases. His medicinal knowledge grew prodigiously.

But, in those days, doctors commanded little respect among the social elite. Himself a doctor, Li Yanwen wanted his son Li Shizhen to study for the civil service recruitment examination instead of following in his footsteps. Under his father's encouragement, Li Shizhen was able at the age of 14 to qualify as

考试，三次都没有考中，别人都替他可惜，李时珍却并不因此失望。他的志愿是做个替百姓治病的好医生。

打那时候起，李时珍就一心一意跟他父亲学医。正好在这一年，他的家乡发生一场大水灾，水退以后，又流行疫病，生病的都是没钱的穷百姓。李时珍家并不宽裕，但是父子俩都很同情穷人，穷人找他们看病，他们都悉心医治，不计报酬。老百姓认为他们医术高明，治病热心，都很感激他们。

李时珍为了研究医术，读了许多古代的医书。我国古代很早就有了医书。汉朝人写过一本《神农本草经》，以后一千多年，不断出了许多新的医书。李时珍常常替当地的王公贵族看病，那些贵族家里藏书不少，李时珍就靠他行医看病的方便，向王公贵族家借图书看。这样一来，他的学问就越来越丰富，医术也越来越高明了。

李时珍的名气越来越响，被他看好病的人，到处宣传李医生好。附近州县得病的人，也赶来请李时珍看病。

有一次，楚王的儿子得了一种抽风的病，楚王府虽然也有医官，但是谁都没法治好。这孩子是楚王的命根子，楚王怎么

xú cai, or candidate for the Provincial Examination, which he then failed three times in a row. While this caused much hand-wringing among family and friends, Li Shizhen was not unduly disappointed. He was much more interested in becoming a good doctor to treat illnesses.

From then on, Li Shizhen started to study medicine in earnest under his father's tutelage. That same year, his home village was hit by a large flood, which brought in its wake an epidemic that disproportionately affected the poor. Although financially modest themselves, father and son had deep compassion for the poor and treated them with care, regardless of their ability to pay. The community was grateful to them for their medical expertise and devotion to patient care.

In his effort to hone his medical skills, Li Shizhen studied many ancient medical texts. The medical literature went back a long way in China. The *Shen Nong's Materia Medica* written in the Han Dynasty was followed by fresh crops of new medical treatises throughout the more than a thousand years that preceded his time. Li Shizhen had an opportunity to borrow from the impressive collections of books found in the homes of the rich and powerful who were treated by him. His voracious reading made him a powerhouse of knowledge and sharpened his medical skills.

Li Shizhen's fame grew as patients successfully treated by him vocally praised his medical expertise. Patients from nearby regions and counties flocked to Li Shizhen's home for treatment.

When his son, the light of his life, was one day racked by convulsions, and even the resident doctors in his household could not cure the disease, the Prince of Chu was understandably

不着急？有人告诉楚王，只有找李时珍，才能治好这种病。楚王赶快派人把李时珍请到王府。李时珍一看病人的脸色，再按了按脉，就知道孩子得的这种抽风病是肠胃病引起的。他开个调理肠胃的药方，叫人上药铺抓了药。楚王的儿子一吃药，病就全好了。

楚王十分高兴，再三挽留李时珍在楚王府呆下来。没有多少日子，正碰上朝廷征求人才。楚王为了讨好明世宗，就把李时珍推荐到北京太医院去。

太医院本来是国家最高的医疗机构。可是在那时候，明世宗对真正的医学并不重视，却迷信一批骗人的方士，在宫里做道场，炼金丹，想凭这些办法使自己长生不老。李时珍是一个正直的医生，看不惯那种乌烟瘴气的环境。他在太医院呆了一年，就辞职回家。

李时珍辞去官职，回家的路上，顺便游览了许多名山胜地。他上山不是为了欣赏景色，而是为了采草药，研究各种草木的药用性质。有一次，他到均州（今湖北均县）的武当山去，听说那里产一种榔梅，吃了能使人返老还童，人们把它称作“仙果”。

worried. When someone suggested that only Li Shizhen could cure this disease, the Prince of Chu immediately sent for him. By examining the patient's facial complexion and feeling his pulse, Li Shizhen concluded the convulsions had a gastrointestinal origin. He prescribed a course of medicine to treat the patient's digestive system and sent the prescription to be filled by an apothecary. The convulsions stopped after the administration of the medicine.

The Prince of Chu was so pleased that he insisted on Li Shizhen's staying in his household as resident doctor. It was at this time that the central government launched a campaign to recruit medical talent. In order to ingratiate himself with Emperor Shizong, the Prince of Chu recommended Li Shizhen for a position in the *Imperial Medical Administration in Beijing*.

The *Imperial Medical Administration* was supposed to be the highest medical institution in the country. But Emperor Shizong gave short shrift to real medical science, instead holding a blind faith in the coterie of alchemists who performed Taoist rites and attempted to produce an elixir of life to ensure his immortality. Li Shizhen was a doctor of conscience and felt disgusted by the insalubrious new environment of his workplace. He resigned from the *Imperial Medical Administration* and went home after only one year.

On his way home following his resignation, Li Shizhen visited many renowned mountains and places of interest, not for the scenery but for the purpose of collecting medicinal herbs and studying the medicinal attributes of plants. His travels took him to the Wudang Mountains in Junzhou, modern-day Jun County of Hubei Province, where, he had heard, a plum called the *lang*

宫廷的贵族都把它当作宝贝一样，要地方官吏年年进贡，并且禁止百姓采摘。李时珍可并不相信真有什么仙果。为了弄清真相，他冒着危险，攀登悬崖峭壁，采到了一颗杨梅，带回家乡。经过他详细研究，才知道那种果子只不过像一般梅子一样，有生津止渴的作用，根本谈不上什么“仙果”。

李时珍从长期的医疗工作和采集药物的过程中，得到了不少科学的资料。他发现古代医书上的记载，有不少错误，再说，经过那么多年代，人们又陆续发现了许多古代书上没有记载过的药草。他就决心编写一本新的完备的药书。辞职回家以后，他花了将近三十年的时间，写成了著名的医药著作《本草纲目》。在这本书里，一共记录了一千八百九十二种药，收集了一万多个药方，为发展祖国的医药科学作出了伟大的贡献。

mei plum could rejuvenate whoever ingested it, thus the nickname "immortality fruit." The nobility of the imperial court considered it a treasure and demanded an adequate supply of the plum by the local government in the form of annual tribute. Common folk were prohibited from picking the fruit for their own consumption. Li Shizhen had never been a believer in the so-called "immortality fruit." In order to get to the bottom of it, he climbed precipices at great peril to obtain a sample of the plum and took it home with him. After meticulous research, he came to the conclusion that the langmei plum was no different from the common plum in that it promoted the production of saliva and slaked one's thirst but had no "immortality" property whatsoever.

Li Shizhen amassed a wealth of scientific data in the course of his long years of medical practice and collection of medicinal herbs. He identified many errors in ancient medical texts. There was also the fact that new medicinal herbs, unrecorded in past medical books, had been, and were still being, discovered since the publication of the ancient texts. He decided therefore to compile a new, comprehensive pharmacopoeia. After returning to his home village from the capita he spent nearly thirty years completing the famous *Compendium of Materia Medica*, which recorded 1,892 medicines and collected more than ten thousand prescriptions. It was a great contribution to the development of China's medical science.

《本草纲目》出版以后，一直流传到全世界，已经被翻译成日文、德文、英文、法文、俄文、拉丁文等许多种文字，在世界医药界中占有重要的地位。

至于那个迷信炼丹、一心想长生不老的明世宗，不但没有能长生不老，却因为误服了有毒的“金丹”，丢了性命。

明世宗死后，他的儿子朱载堉（音 hòu）即位，就是明穆宗。

After the publication of the "Compendium," it spread abroad and was eventually translated into Japanese, German, English, French, Russian and Latin, earning an important place in world pharmacology.

Ironically, Emperor Shizong, in his enthusiasm for discovering an elixir of life to ensure his immortality, lost his life when he accidentally swallowed a toxic "golden pill."

At his death, Emperor Shizong was succeeded by his son Zhu Zaihou as Emperor Muzong of Ming.

10、张居正辅政

明穆宗在位的时候，大学士张居正因为才能出众，得到穆宗的信任。公元1572年，穆宗死去，太子朱翊钧（翊音yì）即位，就是明神宗。穆宗遗命张居正等三个大臣辅政。

明神宗即位后不久，张居正成了首辅。张居正根据穆宗的嘱托，真的像老师教学生一样，辅导年才十岁的明神宗。他编了一本有图有文的历史故事书，叫做《帝鉴图说》，每天给神宗讲解。神宗看到这本书很高兴，兴致勃勃地听张居正讲解。有一次，张居正讲完汉文帝在细柳劳军的故事，就说：“陛下应当注意武备。现在太平日子长了，武备越来越松弛，不能不及时注意啊！”

明神宗连忙点头称是。

又有一次，张居正讲完宋仁宗不喜欢用珠玉装饰的故事，明神宗就说：“对呀，做君王的应该把贤臣当作宝贝，珠玉有什么用呢？”

10. The Tutelage of Zhang Juzheng

In the reign of Emperor Muzong, Zhang Juzheng, a Grand Secretary, won the trust of the emperor on account of his outstanding abilities. When Emperor Muzong died in 1572, he was succeeded by the crown prince Zhu Yijun as Emperor Shenzong of Ming. On his deathbed, Emperor Muzong designated Zhang Juzheng and two other ministers as Bulwarks of Government to help the next emperor run the country.

Shortly after the accession of Emperor Shenzong, Zhang Juzheng became Chief Bulwark and, as instructed by Emperor Muzong, began to tutor the ten-year-old emperor much like a conscientious teacher. He compiled a collection of illustrated historical tales entitled *Illustrated Lessons for Emperors*. His daily reading and explanation of these tales was eagerly awaited by Emperor Shenzong, who was delighted by the book. Once, after finishing the tale about Emperor Wen of Han visiting his troops at Camp Xiliu to boost their morale, Zhang Juzheng told the young emperor: "His Majesty should pay attention to war preparedness. When peace has been around for so long, people tend to take it for granted and lower their guard in the matter of arms. It is high time to give it urgent attention."

Emperor Shenzong vigorously nodded in agreement.

On another occasion, Zhang Juzheng had just finished a story about how Emperor Renzong of Song disliked the use of pearls

张居正见十岁的孩子能说出这样的话，很高兴地说：“贤明的君主重视粮食，轻视珠玉。因为百姓靠粮食生活，珠玉这类东西饿了不能充饥，冷了不能御寒啊。”

张居正对神宗教育十分严格，神宗把张居正当作严师看待，既尊敬，又惧怕。再加上太后和宦官冯保的支持，朝政大事几乎全部由张居正作主。

张居正是明朝的一个能干的政治家，他掌握实权以后，就大刀阔斧地在军事、政治、经济几方面着实作了一番整顿。

那个时候，沿海的倭寇虽然已经解决，但北方的鞑靼贵族还不时侵入内地，成为明王朝的很大威胁。张居正把抗倭名将戚继光调到北方，镇守蓟州（在今河北北部），戚继光在山海关到居庸关的长城上修筑了三千多座堡垒。戚家军号令严明，武器精良，多次击败鞑靼的进攻。鞑靼首领俺答表示愿意和好，要求通

and jade as ornament.

"He was right," Emperor Shenzong commented. "An emperor should treasure ministers who offer wise counsel instead. What's the use of pearls and jade?"

Zhang Juzheng was pleased to hear such wise words from the mouth of a ten-year-old child.

"A wise ruler values grain and despises gems and precious stones," he said. "For he knows people can live on food, while precious stones could neither assuage hunger nor offer protection against the cold."

Zhang Juzheng took Emperor Shenzong's education seriously. The emperor venerated Zhang as a strict teacher and was somewhat in awe of him. With the support of the empress dowager and the eunuch Feng Bao, Zhang Juzheng had final say on nearly all matters of state.

Zhang Juzheng was a capable statesman in the Ming Dynasty. After assuming real power, he pushed through bold military, economic and political reforms.

Although the problem of the wo kou on the east coast had been solved, the frequent incursions led by Tartar noblemen in the north grew into a major threat to the Ming Dynasty. Zhang Juzheng sent Qi Jiguang, the legendary nemesis of the wo kou, to the north to head the garrison of Jizhou, in the north of modern-day Hebei province. Qi Jiguang constructed three thousand defensive works along the Great Wall from Shanhai Pass to Juyong Pass. After the well-disciplined and well-armed Qi Army repelled numerous Tartar offensives, Anda Khan, a Tartar leader, expressed a wish for reconciliation and trade. The proposal was reported to the emperor by Zhang Juzheng and it was decreed that Anda Khan

商。张居正奏明朝廷，封俺答为顺义王，一面和赵阳通商往来，一面在边境缮兵屯田，加强防备。以后二三十年明朝和赵阳之间就长期没有发生战争，北方各族人民的生活也安定多了。

当时，黄河年久失修，河水常常泛滥，大批农田被淹，影响农业和运输，张居正任命专治水利的潘季驯督修黄河水利工程。潘季驯修筑堤防，堵塞决口，使黄河不再泛滥，运输通畅，农业生产得到恢复和发展。

原来，由于朝政腐败，大地主兼并土地，逃避税收，一些豪强地主越来越富，国库却越来越穷，张居正下令丈量土地。经过清查，查出了一些被皇亲国戚、豪强地主隐瞒的土地，这一来，使一些豪强地主受到了抑制，国家的收入也增加了。

在丈量土地之后，张居正又把当时各种名目的赋税和劳役合并起来，折合银两征收，称为“一条鞭法”。经过这种税收改革，防止了官吏的营私舞弊，增加了国家的收入，也多少减轻了一点农民的负担。

would be made Prince Shunyi. Zhang implemented a policy of trade with the Tartars coupled with strengthened border defenses, intensive military training and agricultural development in the border areas by the Ming troops. There ensued nearly thirty years of peace between the Ming and the Tartars and improved security for all the ethnic communities in northern China.

In those times the Yellow River, whose maintenance had long been neglected, frequently overflowed its banks, flooding farmland and wreaking havoc on agriculture and transportation. Zhang Juzheng appointed Pan Jixun, an irrigation expert, to oversee the repair of the system of dykes along the Yellow River. Pan Jixun rebuilt the dykes and repaired the breaches to contain the river. As a result, transportation flowed again and agricultural production resumed and grew.

Before the reforms, political corruption allowed large landowners to consolidate and enlarge land holdings and to evade taxes. As a result, powerful gentry and large landowners amassed increasing wealth while state coffers dwindled. Zhang Juzheng ordered a land survey, which uncovered previously undisclosed land holdings owned by members of the imperial clan, nobility, local gentry and landowners. This had a deterrent effect on the large landowners and brought in more revenue for the state.

After the land survey, Zhang Juzheng simplified and consolidated the complex system of taxes and compulsory services, all convertible to monetary levies. The new system was called the "integrated cash taxation scheme." The fiscal reform closed the loopholes that had enabled officials to obtain private gain through fraud; it increased government revenue and lightened to some extent the tax burden on peasants.

张居正花了十年努力，进行了大胆的改革，使十分腐败的明朝政治有了转机。国家的粮仓存粮充足，足够支用十年。但是这些改革自然触犯了一些豪门贵族的利益。他们表面上不得不服从，背地里对张居正恨之人骨。

在张居正执政的第五年，他年老的父亲死在江陵老家，按照封建的礼法，他必须离职守孝三年。但是张居正怕他一离开，正在进行的改革受到影响。在明神宗和一些大臣的挽留，他让儿子奔丧，自己留在京城任职。这一来，就有不少人抓住张居正父死不奔丧的事，大做文章，纷纷向明神宗上书弹劾，有人甚至在大街揭贴告白攻击张居正，闹得满城风雨。后来，明神宗不得不下令，再反对张居正留任的一律处死，攻击才平息下来。

张居正的权实在太集中了，明神宗渐渐长大起来，反而闲得没事干，就有一批亲近的太监在内宫用各种办法给他取乐。有一次，神宗喝醉了酒，无缘无故把两个小太监打得半死。这件事让太后知道了，马上把明神宗找来，狠狠地责备一顿，还叫

In ten years of bold reforms, Zhang Juzheng succeeded in breathing a breath of fresh air into the culture of corruption prevalent in Ming politics, filling state granaries with enough grain reserve to last ten years. But these reforms naturally conflicted with some of the interests of the rich and powerful. While publicly they had to henn to the new regulations, privately they had a visceral hatred for Zhang Juzheng.

In the fifth year of Zhang Juzheng's tenure, his elderly father died in his home town of Jiangling. The traditional etiquette of feudal times demanded that he leave his official duties to go home and observe mourning for a period of three years. But he was worried that his departure would cause the ongoing reforms to falter. Emperor Shenzong and some high officials also wanted him to stay in the capital; so he sent his son to attend the funeral on his behalf so that he could stay "on the job" in the capital. Some people took advantage of his failure to attend his father's funeral and used it to petition Emperor Shenzong for the impeachment of Zhang Juzheng. "Attack ads" sharply critical of him started springing up all over town. The attacks subsided only after Emperor Shenzong felt compelled to issue an edict that threatened to execute anyone challenging Zhang Juzheng's continued service.

With the hulk of power concentrated in Zhang Juzheng, Emperor Shenzong, by now an adult, began to feel bored by having little business to attend to. The eunuchs tried various tacks to amuse him in the back palace. On one occasion, a drunken Emperor Shenzong beat two young eunuchs almost to death for no apparent reason. When the incident came to the empress dowager's attention, she sent for the emperor and gave him a

左右拿《汉书·霍光传》叫神宗读。西汉霍光辅政的时候，不是有个昌邑王刘贺即位后，被太后和霍光废掉皇位吗？现在的张居正的地位就像当年的霍光一样，神宗想到这里，吓得浑身哆嗦，跪在太后面前求饶。

后来，张居正作主，把引诱神宗胡闹的太监全部赶走，太后还让张居正代神宗起草了罪己诏（皇帝责备自己的诏书）。这件事虽然过去了，但是明神宗对张居正，已经从惧怕发展到怀恨了。

公元1582年，张居正病死。明神宗亲自执政。原来对张居正不满的大臣纷纷攻击张居正专横跋扈。第二年明神宗竟把张居正的官爵全部撤掉，后来还派人查抄了张居正的家。张家子孙十几人，被关在屋子里活活饿死。大儿子被拷打后自杀。张居正的改革措施，当然也遭到破坏，刚刚有一点转机的明朝政治又走了下坡路。

severe tongue-lashing. She handed him a copy of the biography of Huo Guang in the *History of the Han Dynasty* to study. During Huo Guang's tutelage in the Western Han period, wasn't there a Prince of Changyi named Liu He who was overthrown by the empress dowager and Huo Guang shortly after his accession to the throne? Well, Zhang Juzheng now occupied the same territory as Huo Guang did in the Han Dynasty. Emperor Shenzong shuddered at the thought and immediately went down on his knees to ask the empress dowager for forgiveness.

A decision was later made by Zhang Juzheng to turn out those eunuchs who lured Emperor Shenzong into unwholesome pastimes. The empress dowager asked Zhang Juzheng to draft a mea culpa edict on the emperor's behalf. Although the matter was thus taken care of, Emperor Shenzong's fear of Zhang Juzheng had now turned into hate.

In 1582 Zhang Juzheng died of illness and Emperor Shenzong took over the reins of state control. High officials who had long resented Zhang Juzheng, now came forward to denounce his arrogance and high-handedness. The following year Emperor Shenzong stripped Zhang Juzheng of his official titles and had all the assets of his family confiscated. A dozen of his offspring were put under house arrest and eventually starved to death. His oldest son committed suicide after being tortured. The reforms instituted by Zhang Juzheng were undone and the Ming government, which had begun to show signs of improvement, resumed its decline.

11、努尔哈赤建立后金

明王朝政治越来越腐败，边防也越来越松弛，在我国东北地区的女真族的一支——建州女真趁机扩大势力，开始强大起来，它的领袖是爱新觉罗·努尔哈赤。

努尔哈赤出身建州女真的贵族家庭。祖父觉昌安和父亲塔克世，都是建州女真的贵族，被明朝封为建州左卫的官员。努尔哈赤从小就练习骑马射箭，练得一身好武艺。十岁那年，母亲死去，他的继母待他不好。努尔哈赤不得不离开家庭，和当地小伙伴在一起，在深山老林里打猎，挖人参，采松子、拾磨菇，然后把这些山货带到抚顺去卖掉，挣钱过活。抚顺的集市很热闹，女真人常在那里用山货跟汉人交换铁器、粮食、盐和纺织品。努尔哈赤在抚顺接触了很多汉人，学会了汉文，他还挺喜欢读《三国演义》、《水浒》一类小说。

建州女真有好几个部落，互相攻杀。明朝总兵李成梁利用建州各部的矛盾来加强统治。努尔哈赤二十五岁那年，建州女

11. Nurhaci Finds the Later Jin

As the Ming government became increasingly corrupt, its border security suffered from neglect and a tribal subgroup of the Jurchens, called the Jianzhou Jurchens, took advantage of the slack to expand and grow stronger. Its leader was Aisin Jioro Nurhaci.

Nurhaci was born to a noble family of the Jianzhou Jurchens. His grandfather Giocangga and his father Taksi were Jurchen noblemen appointed by the Ming as officials of the left Jianzhou garrison. Nurhaci, who started riding and shooting arrows at a young age, became an accomplished horseman and warrior. His mother died when he was ten and his stepmother was cruel to him. Nurhaci had to eke out a living away from home by hunting game, digging ginseng roots, picking pine seeds and collecting mushrooms deep in the forests with his friends and selling them in Fushun. At the bustling bazaars and fairs in Fushun, the Jurchens traded their mountain fare and ware for the iron implements, food, salt and fabrics of the Han people. In his long contact with the Han people in Fushun, Nurhaci learned to speak Mandarin. He enjoyed reading Chinese novels such as the *Romance of the Three Kingdoms* and *Heroes of the Water Margin*.

Several clans of the Jianzhou Jurchens were constantly fighting each other for domination. Li Chenliang, Regional Commander of the Ming, exploited this rivalry to maintain tight control. When Nurhaci was 25, Tulin's Nikan Wailan, a Jianzhou

真都有个土伦城的城主尼堪外兰，常引明军攻打古勒寨城主阿台。阿台的妻子是觉昌安的孙女。觉昌安得到消息，带着塔克世到古勒寨去探望孙女。正碰上明军攻打古勒寨，觉昌安和塔克世在混战中都被明军杀害。

努尔哈齐痛哭了一场，葬了他的祖父、父亲，但是想到自己的力量太小，不敢得罪明军，就把一股怨恨全集中在尼堪外兰身上。他跑到明朝官吏那里说：“杀我祖父、父亲的是尼堪外兰，只要你们把尼堪外兰交给我，我也就甘心了。”明朝官吏只把他祖父、父亲的遗体交还他，但不肯交出尼堪外兰。

努尔哈齐满腔悲愤回到家里，圈出了他父亲留下的十三副盔甲，分发给手下兵士，向土伦城进攻。努尔哈齐英勇善战，尼堪外兰不是他的对手，狼狈逃走。努尔哈齐攻克了土伦城，继续追击，趁机又征服了建州女真的一些部落。

尼堪外兰东奔西窜，最后逃到了鄂勒珲（今齐齐哈尔附近），请求明军保护。努尔哈齐也追到那里。明军看他不肯罢休，怕因此引起战争，就让努尔哈齐杀了尼堪外兰。

努尔哈齐灭了尼堪外兰，声势越来越大。过了几年，统一了建州女真。这就引起女真其他部落的恐慌。当时的女真族，共有三部，除了建州女真之外，还有海西女真和“野人”女真。

Jurchen, accompanied Ming troops to attack Atai's Fort Gure. Atai's wife was a granddaughter of Giocangga and when the latter heard of the attack, he took Taksi with him to visit his granddaughter at Fort Gure. They were in the fort when the Ming army began its assault and both Giocangga and Taksi were killed in the battle.

Nurhaci cried over their death and buried his grandfather and his father. Knowing he was not strong enough to take on the Ming army, he directed all his venom against Nikan Wailan.

"It was Nikan Wailan who killed my grandfather and my father," he told Ming officials. "I will be satisfied if you turn over Nikan to me." The Ming government refused.

The embittered Nurhaci returned home, got out the thirteen suits of armor his father left behind and distributed them to his followers. He led them on an attack on Tulin, Nikan Wailan, who was no match for the brave and battle-savvy warrior Nurhaci, fled in haste. After capturing Tulin, Nurhaci pressed on and conquered some other clans of the Jianzhou Jurchens.

Following a harried flight, Nikan Wailan finally arrived near what is modern-day Qiqihar and requested the protection of Ming troops. Nurhaci soon caught up with him there. Realizing that Nurhaci was not going to take no for an answer, the Ming army allowed him to slaughter Nikan Wailan in order to avoid an armed confrontation.

With Nikan Wailan eliminated, Nurhaci became more powerful than ever. A few years later he succeeded in unifying the Jianzhou Jurchens. This caused panic among other tribes of the Jurchens, which at the time comprised three large subgroups: the Jianzhou Jurchens, the Haixi Jurchens and the "Wild"

海西女真中有个叶赫部最强。公元1593年，叶赫部联合了女真、蒙古九个部落，结成联盟，合兵三万，分三路进攻努尔哈齐。

努尔哈齐听到九部联军来攻，事先做好迎战的准备。他在敌军来路上，埋伏了精兵，在路旁山岭边，安放了滚木石块。一切安排妥当，他就安安稳稳睡起觉来。他的妻子看了很着急，把他推醒，问他：“九部兵来攻打，你怎么睡起觉来，难道真的你给吓糊涂了？”

努尔哈齐笑着说：“如果我害怕，就是想睡也睡不着。”

第二天，建州派出的探子回报敌兵人数众多，将士们听了也有点害怕。努尔哈齐就解释说：“别害怕，现在我们占据险要地形，敌兵虽然多，不过是乌合之众，一定互相观望。如有哪一个领兵先攻，我们就杀他一二个头目，不怕他们不退。”

九部联军到了古勒山下，建州兵在山上严阵以待，先派出一百骑兵挑战。叶赫部一个头目冲来，马被木桩绊倒，建州兵上去把他杀了，另一头目看到这情景也吓昏过去。这一来，九

Jurchens. In 1593 the Yehe tribe, the most powerful among the Haixi Jurchens, entered into an alliance composed of nine Jurchen and Mongol tribes and launched a 30,000-strong coalition force against Nurhaci in a three-pronged attack.

Nurhaci made all necessary preparations in anticipation of the attack by the nine-tribe coalition force, including the laying of ambushes by his best troops and the placing of heavy logs and rocks atop cliffs along the road. When he was satisfied that everything was ready, he went to sleep like a baby. His anxious wife woke him up.

"How can you sleep with the nine tribes marching on you?" she asked. "Have you been scared out of your wits?"

"If I were scared," Nurhaci answered with a laugh, "I wouldn't be able to fall asleep even if I wanted to."

The next day, when the scouts sent from Jianzhou came back with the report that the enemy force was massive, both leaders and the rank and file troops began to feel nervous.

"Don't worry!" Nurhaci reassured them. "We have formidable terrain on our side. They may have the numbers, but they are a ragtag force. They have disparate components who each expect the others to take the initiative. When they start the attack, we will kill a couple of their leaders. That will make them pull back."

When the nine-tribe coalition force arrived at the foot of the Gure Mountains, the Jianzhou Jurchens, already waiting for them in battle formation, sent out one hundred cavalymen to challenge the coalition to a fight. When a Yehe leader charged forth, his horse was tripped by a wooden pole and the Jianzhou troops swarmed around him and killed him; another Yehe leader fainted at the sight. The nine-tribe coalition force, lacking unified

部联军没有统一指挥，四散逃窜，努尔哈齐乘胜追击，击败了叶赫部。又过了几年，基本统一了女真族各部。

努尔哈齐在统一女真过程中，把女真人编为八个旗，旗既是一个行政单位，又是军事组织，每旗下面有许多牛录，一个牛录三百人，平时耕田打猎，战时打仗。这样既推动了生产，又加强了战斗力。为了麻痹明朝，他继续向明朝朝贡称臣，明朝廷认为努尔哈齐态度恭顺，封他为龙虎将军。他还多次到北京，亲自察看明朝政府的虚实。公元1616年，他认为时机成熟，就在八旗贵族拥护下，在赫图阿拉（今辽宁新宾附近）即位称汗，国号大金。为了跟过去的金朝区别，历史上把它称为后金。

command, dispersed in a disorderly retreat. Nurhaci gave chase and defeated the Yehe. In another few years he largely completed the unification of all the Jurchen tribes.

In the course of the unification of the Jurchens, Nurhaci organized the Jurchens into eight "banners." A banner was at once an administrative unit and a military organization; each banner comprised numerous niru of three hundred men each, who farmed and hunted in peace time and performed combat duty in times of war. The system effectively promoted production and increased combat readiness. In order to lull the Ming court into a false sense of security, he kept up his tribute relationship with the Ming, which awarded him the title of Dragon-Tiger General in recognition of his submission. He went to Beijing several times to assess first-hand the true state of the Ming government. In 1616, judging the time ripe, he proclaimed himself Khan of Hetu Ala, near modern-day Xinbin in Liaoning Province, founding the Great Jin Dynasty. To distinguish it from the Jin Dynasty in antiquity, historians have called it the Later Jin.

12、萨尔浒大战

努尔哈齐建立后金后，又花了两年多时间整顿内部，发展生产，扩大兵力。公元1618年，努尔哈齐召集八旗首领和将士誓师，宣布跟明朝有七件事结下了冤仇，叫作“七大恨”。第一条就是明朝无故挑衅，害死了他的祖父和父亲。为了报仇雪恨，决定起兵征伐明朝。

第二天，努尔哈齐亲自率领二万人马进攻抚顺。他先写信给抚顺明军守将，劝他投降。守将李永芳一看后金军来势凶猛，没有抵抗就投降了，后金军俘获了人口、牲畜三十万。明朝的辽东巡抚派兵救援抚顺，也被后金军在半路上打垮。努尔哈齐命令毁了抚顺城，带着大批战利品回到赫图阿拉。

消息传到北京，明神宗大怒，决定派杨镐为辽东经略，讨伐后金。杨镐经过一番紧张的调兵遣将，才集中了十万人马。公元1619年，杨镐分兵四路，由四个总兵官率领，进攻赫图阿拉。中路左翼是山海关总兵杜松，中路右翼是辽东总兵李如柏，北

12. Battle at Sarhu

After the founding of the Later Jin, Nurhaci spent two years cleaning house, expanding production and building up the military. In 1618, Nurhaci summoned the commanders and troops of the Eight Banners to arms and announced his Seven Grievances (Manchurian: *nadan koro*) against the Ming, with the unprovoked slaughter of his father and grandfather topping the list. The announcement served as a declaration of war against the Ming to avenge his elders' deaths.

The following day, Nurhaci led 20,000 men to attack Fushun. He wrote a letter to the city's commander urging him to surrender. The Ming commander Li Yongfang did so without a fight in the face of the overwhelming force of the Later Jin. The Jin troops captured 300,000 people and cattle. The troops sent by the Ming's Grand Coordinator in Liaodong were intercepted and defeated by the Jin army. Nurhaci ordered the city of Fushun destroyed and returned to Hetu Ala loaded with the spoils of war.

When news of the debacle reached Beijing, Emperor Shenzong of Ming was furious. He appointed Yang Hao as Military Commissioner of Liaodong to undertake a punitive expedition against the Later Jin. It was with much effort that Yang Hao was finally able to put together a 100,000-strong force. In 1619, Yang Hao's troops advanced on Hetu Ala along four different routes under four regional commanders. The left flank of the center army was led by Du Song, Regional Commander of Shanhai Pass; the right flank of the center army was led by Li Rubo, Regional

路是开原总兵马林，南路是辽阳总兵刘锜（音ting）。为了扩大声势，号称四十七万。杨镐坐镇沈阳，指挥全局。

那时候，后金八旗军兵力，合起来不过六万多。一些后金将士得到情报，不免有点害怕，来找努尔哈赤，要他拿主意。努尔哈赤胸有成竹地说：“别怕，管他几路来，我就是一路去。”

经过侦察，努尔哈赤得知杜松率领的中路左翼是明军主力，已经从抚顺出发打了过来，他就集中兵力，先对付杜松。

杜松是一员身经百战的名将。从抚顺出发的时候，天正下着大雪，杜松想抢头功，不管气候恶劣，急急忙忙冒雪行军。他先攻占了萨尔浒（今辽宁抚顺东）山口，接着分兵两路，把一半兵力留在萨尔浒扎营，自己带了另一部精兵攻打后金的界藩城（今新宾西北）。

努尔哈赤一看杜松分散兵力，心里暗暗高兴，集中八旗的兵力，一口气攻下萨尔浒明军大营，截断了杜松后路。接着，又急行军援救界藩。正在攻打界藩的明军，听到后路被抄，军心动摇。驻守在界藩的后金军从山上居高临下地压下来，把杜松

Commander of Liaodong; the north army was under the command of Kaiyuan's Regional Commander, Ma Lin; and the south army under Liu Ting, Regional Commander of Liaoyang. The force strength was announced at an inflated 470,000 for psychological effect. Yang Hao directed the campaign from Shenyang.

The total troop strength of the Eight Banners was little over 60,000. Some commanders of the Later Jin were nervous when they received intelligence about enemy troop movements. They went before Nurhaci for advice.

"Don't worry!" Nurhaci told them with self-assurance "Their many routes will not hold up against my one route."

Through reconnaissance Nurhaci knew that the left flank of the enemy's center army led by Du Song was the Ming's main force; it had left Fushun and was marching toward them. He concentrated his force against Du Song.

Du Song was a renowned, battle-hardened general. When he led his troops out of Fushun, it was snowing heavily, but eager to be the first to score a victory. Du Song put his troops on a forced march despite the blizzard. He captured the mountain pass at Sarhu, east of present-day Fushun in Liaoning Province, before dividing his force into two, with half of them camped in Sarhu while he led his elite troops to attack Jiefan (northwest of modern-day Xinbin) controlled by the Later Jin.

Nurhaci restrained his as he discovered Du Song had stretched thin his force. He directed all the troops of the Eight Banners to the Ming camp at Sarhu and by overrunning it, succeeded in cutting off Du Song's retreat route. He then turned around and rushed to Jiefan's rescue on a forced march. The Ming troops attacking Jiefan became demoralized when they learned that they

军杀得七零八落。努尔哈赤率领大军赶到，把明军团团围住。杜松左右冲杀想要突围，突然一箭飞来，正射中他的头部，杜松从马上栽下来死去。部下明军被杀得尸横遍野，血流成河。一路人马先覆灭了。

北路的马林从开原（今辽宁开原）出兵，刚刚到离开萨尔浒四十里的地方，得到杜松兵败的消息，吓得急忙转攻为守，就地依山，扎下营垒，挖了三层壕沟，准备防守。努尔哈赤率领八旗士兵从界藩马不停蹄地赶来，攻破明军营垒。马林没命地逃奔，才回到开原，第二路明军又被打散了。

坐镇沈阳的杨镐，正在等待各路明军的捷报，哪想到一连两天接到的竟是两路人马覆灭的坏消息，把他惊得目瞪口呆。他这才知道努尔哈赤厉害，连忙派快马传令另外两路明军立刻停止进军。

中路右翼的辽东总兵李如柏本来胆小，行动也特别迟缓，接到杨镐命令，急忙撤退。山上巡逻的二十来名后金哨兵远远望

had been outflanked. In the meantime, the Jin troops defending Jiefan came down from high ground and attacked Du Song's army, decimating it. When Nurhaci arrived with his army, they encircled the Ming force in a tight noose. As Du Song dashed about to find a gap in the encirclement, he was shot in the head by an arrow. He fell from his horse and died on the spot. The bodies of his massacred troops strewed the battlefield. His elite force was wiped out in the bloodbath.

When the north army under the command of Ma Lin marched within 40 li of Sarhu, not long after setting off from Kaiyuan in Liaoning Province, it received news of Du Song's failure. Ma Lin, shaken by the development, made the immediate decision to switch from the offensive to the defensive posture. He ordered his troops to pitch camp in order to take advantage of the mountainous terrain. Three rows of trenches were dug as the troops settled in for a long resistance. The eight-banner force under the command of Nurhaci raced from Jiefan and again overran the Ming camp. Ma Lin fled hastily back to Kaiyuan. Thus a second Ming army was defeated.

Yang Hao, directing the campaign from Shenyang and waiting for news of victories from the various fronts, was instead shocked by the news of two fiascos in two days. Recognizing a formidable foe in Nurhaci, he sent rapid orders for the remaining two armies to immediately halt their march.

Li Rubo, Liaodong's Regional Commander leading the right flank of the center army, was well known for his timorous nature and propensity for acting in a slow, deliberate manner. He was all too happy to pull back upon receiving the order from Yang Hao. When the twenty or so Jin sentinels on patrol in the hills

见明军撤退，大声鼓噪，明军兵士以为后面有大批追兵，争先恐后地逃跑，自相践踏，也死了不少。

剩下的一路是南路军刘铤。杨镐发出停止进军命令的时候，刘铤军已经深入到后金军阵地，各路明军失败的情况，他一点也不知道。刘铤是明军中出名的猛将，他使用一把一百二十斤的大刀，运转如飞，外号叫“刘大刀”。刘铤军军令严明，武器火药也多。进入后金阵地以后，连破几个营寨。

努尔哈赤知道刘铤骁勇，不能光靠拼硬仗。他选了一个投降过来的明兵，叫他冒充杜松部下，送信给刘铤，说杜松军已经到赫图阿拉城下，只等刘铤军去会师攻城。

刘铤没接到杨镐命令，不知道杜松军已经覆灭，信以为真。他怕让杜松独得头功，下令火速进军。这一带道路险峻，兵马不能够并列，只好改为单列进军。刘铤带兵走了一阵，忽然杀声四起，漫山遍野都是后金伏兵，向明军杀来。刘铤正在着急，努尔哈赤又派了一支后金兵穿着明军衣甲，打着明军旗帜，装扮成杜松军前来接应。刘铤毫不怀疑，把人马带进假明军的包

saw the Ming withdrawal, they raised a loud clamor, which led the Ming troops to believe they were being pursued by a large Jin contingent. This triggered a stampede resulting in many Ming soldiers being trampled to death by their own comrades.

That left the south army led by Liu Ting. When Yang Hao issued the order to halt the troops' advance, Liu Ting's army had already penetrated deep into Jin territory and had no knowledge of the grievous defeats suffered by the other Ming armies. Liu Ting was a Ming commander famous for his prowess in battle; he wielded a broad sword weighing some one hundred twenty jin with such ease and deftness that it seemed to fly in the air, thus earning him the nickname of "Broad Sword Liu." Liu Ting ran a tight ship as commander and his army was well-armed and equipped. He had already overrun a string of enemy forts as his army went deep into enemy territory.

Nurhaci knew that he couldn't count on direct confrontation to defeat the valiant Liu Ting. He had a Ming defector, disguised as Du Song's subordinate, carry a letter to Liu Ting, saying Du Song's army was now at the gates of Hetu Ala, waiting only for Liu Ting's army to join him for an assault on the city.

Liu Ting, who had not yet received the new orders of Yang Hao and did not know Du Song's army had been wiped out, did not doubt the veracity of the story. Not wanting Du Song to keep all the credit for himself, he ordered an immediate march on Hetu Ala. The road was too narrow even for men or horses to march two abreast, so they had to form a single file. A sudden, murderous clamor erupted around Liu Ting's troops. The hills and valleys now swarmed with Jin ambushers, who charged at them from all directions. In his consternation, Liu Ting saw a contingent of troops

圈里，后金军里应外合，四面夹击，明军阵势大乱。刘铤虽然勇敢，挥舞大刀，杀退了一些后金兵，但是毕竟寡不敌众，他左右两臂都受了重伤，终于倒下。

这场战争从开始到结束，只有五天时间，杨镐率领的十万明军损失了一大半，文武将官死了三百多人。这就是历史上著名的“萨尔浒之战”。

萨尔浒之战后，明朝大伤元气，后金步步进逼，过了两年，努尔哈赤又率领八旗大军，接连攻占了辽东重要据点沈阳和辽阳。

公元1625年三月，努尔哈赤把后金都城迁到沈阳，把沈阳称为盛京。打那以后，后金就成了明朝最大的威胁。

in Ming uniform flying Ming flags coming to his rescue. Without hesitation, Liu Ting brought his troops into the midst of this "Ming" contingent, which was actually composed of Jin troops in disguise, sent by Nurhaci to lure Liu Ting into a trap. Hemmed in on all sides by Jin troops, the Ming army fell into disarray. The valiant Liu Ting, wielding his broadsword, was able to kill a number of Jin soldiers, but was soon overwhelmed. With serious injuries to both arms, he finally fell.

The entire campaign lasted a mere five days from start to finish, with half of Yang Hao's force decimated, and more than three hundred high-ranking civil and military officers killed. This is known as the famous "Battle of Sarhu" in Chinese history.

The battle at Sarhu seriously drained the strength of the Ming. The later Jin pressed its advantage in further attacks. Two years later Nurhaci, at the head of his eight-banner force, captured the important strategic towns of Shenyang and Liaoyang in Liaodong in quick succession.

In March 1625, Nurhaci moved the capital of the Later Jin to Shenyang, which he renamed Shengjing. Henceforth, the Later Jin became the greatest threat to the Ming.

13、徐光启研究西学

杨镐统率的四路大军在萨尔浒几乎全部覆没，满朝文武大臣都十分震惊。大家齐集在官门外，呼吁明神宗增加兵力，调拨军饷，抵抗后金。翰林院官员徐光启，一连上了三道奏章，认为要挽救国家危局，只有精选人才，训练新兵，还自愿担任练兵的工作。明神宗听说徐光启熟识军事，就批准他到通州练兵。

徐光启是上海人。在他出生之前，上海沿海一带遭倭寇骚扰十分严重。徐光启小时候，常常听他的父亲谈起当地人民英勇反抗倭寇侵略的情景，心里滋长起爱国的激情。

徐光启长大以后，因为参加科举考试，路过南京，听说那儿来了个欧洲传教士利玛窦（音 dou），经常讲些西方的科学知识。南京的一些读书人都喜欢跟利玛窦结交。徐光启经过别人介绍，认识了利玛窦。他听利玛窦讲的科学道理，都是自己过

13. Xu Guangqi Studies Western Sciences

The entire Ming court was in a state of shock after the near annihilation of all four armies under Yang Hao at Sarhu. The entire civil and military leadership assembled at the entrance of the palace to call on Emperor Shenzong to confront the Jin threat by building up the military and increasing military pay and spending. Xu Guangqi, an official of the imperial Hanlin Academy, fired off three petitions in quick succession arguing for the necessity of selecting the best talent and recruiting new blood into the army, for whose training he volunteered his own service. Having heard that Xu Guangqi was well versed in military matters, Emperor Shenzong agreed to send him to Tongzhou to train troops.

Xu Guangqi was from Shanghai. Before his birth, Shanghai shores were plagued by *wo kou* (Japanese pirates) incursions. Frequent accounts by his father of the heroic deeds of popular resistance against the *wo kou* instilled a patriotic passion in the young Xu Guangqi.

In his adulthood, as Xu Guangqi passed through Nanjing on his way to take the civil service recruitment examination he learned that a European missionary named Matteo Ricci gave frequent talks there about Western sciences and was befriended by many Chinese intellectuals. Through an intermediary, Xu Guangqi was able to meet Matteo Ricci. He found that the scientific knowledge disseminated by Matteo Ricci was nowhere

去在古书上没有读到过的。打那时候起，他对西方科学发生了浓厚的兴趣。

利玛窦传播科学知识，主要是为了传教的方便。他觉得要扩大传教，一定要得到中国皇帝的支持。那时候，明朝是不让教士到北京传教的。利玛窦要地方大臣在明神宗面前帮他说话，他还到了北京，通过宦官马堂的门路，送给明神宗圣经、圣母图，还有几只新式的自鸣钟。

明神宗不懂得圣经，也不知道圣母是什么人。但是对新式自鸣钟，倒很感兴趣，命令马堂把利玛窦带进宫来。

明神宗接见利玛窦的时候，请利玛窦谈谈西洋的风俗人情。利玛窦本来是意大利人，为了夸耀自己，把自己说成是“大西洋国”的人。有人一查万国地图，找不到什么“大西洋国”，就怀疑利玛窦来历不明，要明神宗把他撵走。但是明神宗不听这个意见，倒赏给利玛窦一些财物，让他留在京城传教。有了皇帝的支持，利玛窦跟朝廷官员们接触就很方便了。

过了几年，徐光启考取进士，也到了北京，在翰林院做官。

to be found in the ancient Chinese texts he had studied. He developed an intense interest in Western sciences.

Matteo Ricci disseminated scientific knowledge mainly to facilitate his missionary work. He believed that in order to widen the appeal of his religion, he must obtain the blessing of the Chinese emperor. In that period, the Ming prohibited missionary work in Beijing. Matteo Ricci lobbied local high officials to intercede with the emperor on his behalf. He traveled to Beijing and with the help of the eunuch Ma Tang, offered a Christian bible, an icon of the Virgin Mary and a few newfangled chiming timepieces to Emperor Shenzong as gifts.

Emperor Shenzong didn't understand the bible, nor did he know who the Virgin Mary was. But the novel chiming clocks piqued his interest and he immediately had Matteo Ricci brought to his palace.

At the reception of Matteo Ricci, Emperor Shenzong asked him to describe Western customs and mores. Matteo Ricci, who was Italian, tried to inflate his importance by claiming to be from the country of *Da Xi Yang*, or "Great Western Ocean". When a check of the world atlas produced no country of such name, some began to doubt his provenance and urged Emperor Shenzong to run him out of the city. But Emperor Shenzong disregarded this advice and instead offered him money and gave him permission to do missionary work in Beijing. The support of the emperor greatly facilitated Matteo's contact and interaction with court officials.

A few years later, having won the title of Metropolitan Graduate after succeeding in the highest-level civil service recruitment examination, Xu Guangqi arrived in Beijing to serve at the Hanlin Academy. Believing that the study of Western

他认为学习西方的科学，对国家富强有好处，就决心拜利玛窦为师，向他学习天文、数学、测量、武器制造各方面的科学知识。

有一次，徐光启到利玛窦那儿去学习。利玛窦跟他谈起，西方有一本数学著作叫《几何原本》，是古代希腊数学家欧几里得写的一本重要著作，可惜要翻译成汉文很困难。徐光启说：“既然有这样的好书，您又愿意指教，不管怎样困难，我也要把它翻译出来。”

打那以后，徐光启每天下午一离开翰林院，就赶到利玛窦那儿，跟利玛窦合作翻译《几何原本》，由利玛窦讲述，徐光启笔译。那时候，还没有人译过国外数学著作，要把原作译得准确，可不是件简单事。徐光启花了一年多时间，逐字逐句地反复推敲，再三修改，终于把前六卷《几何原本》翻译完成。

除了《几何原本》之外，徐光启还跟利玛窦和另一个西方传教士熊三拔合作，翻译过测量、水利方面的科学著作。后来，他又在研究我国古代历法的基础上，吸收了当时欧洲在天文方面的最新科学知识，对天文历法的研究，达到了很高的水平。

徐光启不但爱好科学，还十分关心民间疾苦。有一年，他父亲死去，徐光启回到上海守丧。那年夏天，江南遭到一场水灾，

sciences would contribute to increased national prosperity and strength, he decided to ask Matteo Ricci to be his teacher in scientific disciplines, including astronomy, mathematics, survey and weapon manufacture.

One day in class, Matteo Ricci mentioned to Xu Guangqi a major mathematical work by the Greek mathematician Euclid entitled *Elements*. He said it was a pity that the translation of such an important work into Chinese proved such a difficult undertaking.

"Since this book is so important and you express the willingness to offer advice and assistance," said Xu Guangqi, "I will translate it no matter how difficult it is."

From then on, Xu Guangqi would go to Matteo every afternoon after work to work on the translation of Euclid's *Elements*, with Matteo explaining the text and Xu Guangqi committing it to paper in Chinese. No one had ever attempted the translation of a foreign mathematical text before and an accurate rendering of the original into Chinese was no mean feat. After spending more than a year carefully weighing each word and sentence and repeatedly revising the draft, Xu Guangqi finally completed the translation of the first six parts of *Elements*.

In addition to Euclid's *Elements*, Xu Guangqi also collaborated with Matteo Ricci and another missionary, Sabatino de Ursis, on translations of scientific works on survey and irrigation and water conservancy. By combining his study of ancient Chinese calendric systems with the latest advances in astronomy in contemporary Europe, he raised astronomic and calendric research to a high level.

In his devotion to science, Xu Guangqi never stopped being

大水把稻、麦都淹了。水退之后，农田上颗粒无收。徐光启为这个心里挺着急。他想，如果不补种点别的庄稼，来年春天拿什么度荒呀！恰巧在这时候，有个朋友从福建带来了一批甘薯的秧苗。徐光启就在荒地上试种起甘薯来，过了不久，长得一片葱绿，十分茂盛。后来，他特地编了一本小册子，推广种甘薯的办法。本来只在福建沿海种植的甘薯就移植到江浙一带来了。

这一回，徐光启提出练兵的主张，得到明神宗的批准，他满怀希望，想尽快练好新兵，加强国防。哪料到朝廷各个部门腐败透了，练兵衙门成立了一个月，徐光启要人没人，要钱没钱，闲得没事干。后来，好不容易领到一点军饷，到了通州，检阅了那儿招来的七千多新兵，大多是老弱残兵，能够勉强充数的只有二千人，更说不上精锐了，他大失所望，只好请求辞职。

deeply concerned about the harsh fate of the struggling masses. When his father died Xu Guangqi returned to Shanghai to observe mourning. That summer a large flood in southeast China submerged vast agricultural areas planted with rice or wheat. After the water receded, not a kernel was left on the farmland. Xu Guangqi was pained by the dire situation.

"If no other food crop is substituted, how will people survive the food shortage come next spring?" he fretted.

It so happened that a friend had brought some sweet potato seedlings from Fujian and Xu Guangqi began an experiment by planting them on some uncultivated land. Soon the seedlings thrived and formed an abundant mass. He eventually published a booklet dedicated to the popularization of sweet potato farming. The plant, which originated in coastal Fujian, was thus successfully transplanted to Jiangsu and Zhejiang.

Emperor Shenzong's approval of his ideas about training the military filled Xu Guangqi with hope and he couldn't wait to start training new recruits in order to make a contribution to national defense. But he had not expected to run into so much corruption in government bureaucracies. A month after the setting up of the military training office, Xu Guangqi had still not received recruits or troop salary and had no useful work to perform. When he finally received some funds to pay troop salary, he traveled to Tongzhou and reviewed the seven thousand new recruits. Most of them turned out to be mostly elderly, frail or suffering some form of disability. Only two thousand of them could serve, at a pinch, in some military capacity; but by no stretch of the imagination could he be deemed good soldier material. In disappointment he submitted his resignation.

公元1620年，明神宗死去，他的儿子明光宗朱常洛也接着病死，神宗的孙子朱由校即位，这就是明熹宗。徐光启又回到京城，他看到后金的威胁越来越严重，又竭力主张要多造西洋大炮。为了这件事，跟兵部尚书发生矛盾，徐光启被排挤出朝廷。

徐光启回到上海，已经是六十多岁的老人了。他本来对研究农业科学很有兴趣，回到家乡后，又在自己的田地上，亲自参加劳动，做一些试验。后来，他把他平日的研究成果，写成了一部著作，叫作《农政全书》。在这本书里，对我国的农具，土壤、水利、施肥、选种、嫁接等农业技术，都有详细的记载，真可以称得上我国古代的一部农业百科全书呢！

In 1620, Emperor Shenzong died and was succeeded by his son Zhu Changluo as Emperor Guangzong of Ming, who died of illness shortly after. When Emperor Shenzong's grandson, Zhu Youjiao, acceded to the throne as Emperor Xizong of Ming, Xu Guangqi returned to the imperial capital. He again made a strong pitch for the manufacture of Western-type cannons to confront the increasing threat posed by the Later Jin. This created tension between him and the Minister of War and led to Xu's expulsion from the Ming court.

When Xu Guangqi returned to Shanghai, he was in his sixties. His long interest in agronomy led him to carry out experiments in his own fields. His findings were the basis for his *Complete Treatise on Agricultural Administration*, which provided detailed descriptions of farming implements, soil, water conservancy, fertilization, seed selection and grafting. It was a veritable encyclopedia of agriculture in those times.

14、左光斗入狱

明神宗后期，有个官员名叫顾宪成，因为正直敢谏，得罪了明神宗，被撤了职。他回到无锡（今江苏无锡）老家后，约了几个志同道合的朋友在东门外东林书院讲学。附近一些读书人听到顾宪成学问好，都赶到无锡来听他讲学，把一所本来就不大的东林书院挤得满满的。顾宪成痛恨朝廷黑暗，在讲学的时候，免不了议论起朝廷，还批评一些当政的大臣。听过讲学的人都说顾宪成议论得对，京城里也有大臣支持他。东林书院名声越来越大。一些被批评的官僚权贵却对顾宪成恨得要命，把支持东林书院的人称作“东林党人”。

明熹宗刚即位的时候，一些支持东林党的大臣掌了权，其中最有名望的要数杨涟和左光斗。

14. Zuo Guangdou Goes to Jail

In the late reign of Emperor Shenzong of Ming, Gu Xiancheng, an official known for his courage in speaking truth to the leadership, was sacked after incurring the displeasure of Emperor Shenzong. After returning to his home town of Wuxi in Jiangsu Province, he organized a group of kindred spirits to study under him at the Donglin Academy outside the East Gate. Intellectuals and scholars in surrounding cities and towns, drawn by Gu Xiancheng's renowned learnedness, flocked to Wuxi to attend his lectures, filling the far from spacious halls of the academy to capacity. Disgusted by the corrupt and shadowy practices at the Ming court, he would inevitably pepper his lectures with criticisms of the politics of the court and direct his fire at some incumbent high officials. Those who attended his lectures largely shared those criticisms, which also found support among some high officials in the capital.

As the fame of the Donglin Academy steadily spread, the hatred for Gu Xiancheng among bureaucrats and members of the rich and powerful who had been pilloried by him rose to a new pitch; they took to branding those who supported the Donglin Academy partisans of the "Donglin Clique."

In the period immediately following the accession of Emperor Xizong of Ming, some partisans of the "Donglin Clique" rose to power. The most renowned of them were Yang Lian and Zuo Guangdou. On one occasion Zuo Guangdou was sent by the central government on an inspection tour of the environs of the

有一次，朝廷派左光斗到京城附近视察，还负责那里的科举考试。

一天，北风刮得很紧，天上飘起了大雪。左光斗在官署里喝了几盅酒，忽然起了游兴。他带着几个随从，骑着马到郊外去踏雪。他们走着走着，见到一座古寺，环境十分幽静，左光斗决定到里面去休息一下。

他们下了马，推开虚掩的寺门，进了古寺，只见左边走廊边的小房间里，有个书生伏在桌上打瞌睡，桌上还放着几卷文稿。左光斗走近前去，拿起桌上的文稿细细看了起来。那文稿不但字迹清秀，而且文辞精彩，左光斗看了不禁暗暗赞赏。他放下文稿，正想转身回去，忽然想到，外面正下大雪，天气严寒，那书生穿得那样单薄，睡着了岂不要受凉，就毫不犹豫地把自己身上披的那件貂皮披风解下来，轻轻地盖在书生身上。

左光斗退出门外，把门掩上，他打发随从到寺里和尚那里去一打听，才知道那书生名叫史可法，是新到京城来应考的。左光斗把这个名字暗暗记住。

到了考试那天，左光斗进了厅堂。堂上的小吏高唱着考生

capital, where he was also charged with overseeing the civil service recruitment examination.

One day, Zuo Guangdou was drinking in his office while outside a bitter north wind blew and large flakes of snow steadily drifted down from the sky when suddenly, he was seized with an impulse to go out for a jaunt. Accompanied by a few aides, he rode to the outskirts of town through a snow-blanketed landscape. An ancient-looking temple in a quiet setting came into view; Zuo Guangdou decided to go in for a rest.

They dismounted. When they entered the temple through the door, which stood ajar, they found in a small room opening left off the corridor a scholar who had dozed off, slumped over a desk with a few scrolls of manuscripts lying on it. Zuo went up to the desk and picked up the scrolls, which he read with interest. He marveled at the elegance of the calligraphy and the verve and grace of the writing. As he put down the manuscripts and turned to leave, it suddenly occurred to him that with the heavy snow and freezing temperature outside, the young scholar, who was clearly not wearing enough warm clothing, would surely catch cold in his sleep. He undid the mink cape draped on himself and without hesitation put it gently on the scholar.

After withdrawing from the room and pulling the door closed, Zuo Guangdou sent an assistant to find out more from the monks of the temple. They learned that the scholar's name was Shi Kefa; he had come to the capital to present himself at the civil service recruitment examination. Zuo Guangdou made a mental note of the name.

On the day of the examination, Zuo Guangdou presided over the examination hall as the names of the candidates were read

的名字。当小吏唱到史可法的名字时，左光斗注意看那个送试卷上来的考生，果然是那天寺里见到的书生。左光斗接过试卷，当场把史可法评为第一名。

考试以后，左光斗在他的官府接见史可法，勉励了一番，又把他带到后堂，见过左夫人。他当着左夫人的面夸奖说：“我家几个孩子都没有才能，将来继承我的事业，全靠这个小伙子了。”

打那以后，左光斗和史可法建立了亲密的师生关系。史可法家里贫穷，左光斗要他住进官府，亲自指点他读书。有时候，左光斗处理公事到深更半夜，还跑到史可法的房间里，两个兴高采烈地讨论起学问来，简直不想睡觉。

左光斗和杨涟一心一意想整顿朝政，但是明熹宗是个昏庸透顶的人。他宠信一个胆坏的宦官魏忠贤，让魏忠贤掌握特务机构东厂。魏忠贤凭借手中的特权，结党营私，实官受贿，干尽

out one by one. When the name of Shi Kefa was called, Zuo Guangdou took a careful look at the candidate walking up with his dissertation and confirmed that it was the same scholar he had seen the previous day in the temple. Zuo Guangdou took the dissertation from the young man and marked it "Rank number 1" on the spot.

After the examination, Zuo Guangdou received Shi Kefa in his official residence, offering words of praise and encouragement. He then took him to the family quarters to meet Mrs. Zuo. He glowingly introduced Shi Kefa to his wife.

"Our own children are undistinguished," he told her, "so I count on this young fellow to take over my mantle."

From then on, Zuo Guangdou and Shi Kefa developed a close teacher-student rapport. In light of the difficult financial situation of Shi Kefa's family, Zuo Guangdou had him move into his official residence so that he could give personal attention to his studies. Sometimes, when Zuo Guangdou worked deep into the night, he would walk over to Shi Kefa's room to have intellectual discussions with him. They would become so engrossed in the lively exchange that they sometimes forgot it was well past bed time.

Zuo Guangdou and Yang Lian were committed to government reform, but Emperor Xizong was hopelessly incompetent and fatuous. He gave Wei Zhongxian, an evil eunuch, free rein in running the infamous secret service "the Eastern Depot." The powers and privileges he enjoyed enabled Wei Zhongxian to build a power base doing a brisk business of reaping private gain by selling patronage, taking bribes, doing shady dealings and all manner of unscrupulous deeds. Some bureaucrats opposed to the "Donglin Clique" offered their allegiance to Wei Zhongxian

了坏事。一些反对东林党的官僚就投靠魏忠贤，结成一伙，历史上把他们称做“阉党”（阉音yān，指太监）。杨涟对阉党的胡作非为气愤不过，大胆上了一份奏章，揭发魏忠贤二十四条罪状。左光斗也大力支持他。

这一来可捅了漏子。公元1625年，魏忠贤和他的阉党勾结起来攻击杨涟。左光斗是东林党，罗织罪状，把他们打进大牢，严刑逼供。

左光斗被捕以后，史可法急得不知怎么办才好。他每天从早到晚，在牢门外转来转去，想找机会探望老师。可阉党把左光斗看得很严密，不让人探望。

左光斗在牢里，任凭阉党怎样拷打，始终不肯屈服。史可法听说左光斗被折磨得快要死了，不顾自己的危险，拿了五十两银子去向狱卒苦苦哀求，只求见老师最后一面。

狱卒终于被史可法的诚意感动了，想办法给史可法一个探监的机会。当天晚上，史可法换上一件破烂的短衣，扮作捡粪人的样子，穿着草鞋，背着竹筐，手拿长铲，由狱卒带领着进了牢监。

史可法找到左光斗的牢房，只见左光斗坐在角落里，遍体鳞伤，脸已经被烧得认不清，左腿腐烂得露出骨头来。史可法

the eunuch and formed a clique known to history as the "Castratists." Revolted by the excesses of the Castratists, Yang Lian fearlessly presented a petition to the emperor containing a 24-count indictment of Wei Zhongxian's crimes. Zuo Guangdou offered him his unreserved support.

This action brought grief on them. In 1625, Wei Zhongxian and his Castratists launched a coordinated attack against Yang Lian and Zuo Guangdou, accusing them of being partisans of the "Donglin Clique." They were thrown in jail and tortured.

After Zuo Guangdou's arrest, Shi Kefa became agitated and frustrated by his inability to help. He paced back and forth outside the prison gate, desperate for a chance to visit his mentor. But the Castratists kept a tight watch, holding Zuo Guangdou incommunicado.

Despite being tortured by the Castratists, Zuo Guangdou refused to buckle. When Shi Kefa heard that Zuo Guangdou was on the brink of dying from the torture, he offered fifty taels of silver to the prison guard, at great peril to himself, for a chance to see his mentor before his death.

The prison guard, moved by Shi Kefa's devotion to his mentor, agreed to find a way for Shi to visit the inmate. That night, Shi Kefa changed into a tattered tunic and put on straw sandals to pass for a collector of human waste. With a bamboo basket slung on his back and a shovel in his hand, he was led by the prison guard into the prison.

When Shi Kefa came to the cell of Zuo Guangdou, he found him sitting in a corner, with bruises and injuries all over his body, his face burned beyond recognition and his left leg rotted to the bone. Shi Kefa's heart contracted with pain at the sight; he walked

见了，一阵心酸，走近前去，跪了下来，抱住左光斗的腿，不断地抽泣。

左光斗满脸是伤，睁不开眼，但是他从哭泣声里听出史可法来了。他举起手，用尽力气拨开眼皮，愤怒的眼光像要喷出火来。他骂着说：“蠢才！这是什么地方，你还来干什么！国家的事糟到这步田地。我已经完了，你还不顾死活地跑进来，万一被他们发现，将来的事靠谁干？”

史可法还是抽泣着没完，左光斗狠狠地说：“再不走，我现在就干脆收拾了你，省得奸人动手。”说着，他真的摸起身边的镣铐，做出要砸过来的样子。

史可法不敢再说话，只好忍住悲痛，从牢里退了出来。

过了几天，左光斗和杨涟等终于被魏忠贤杀害。史可法又花了一笔钱买通狱卒，把左光斗的尸体埋葬好了。他想起牢里的情景，总是情不自禁落下眼泪，说：“我老师的心肠，真是铁石铸成的啊！”

up to Zuo Guangdou, fell down on his knees and started to sob uncontrollably, his arms holding Zuo's leg.

Zuo Guangdou was unable to open his eyes because of the bruises covering his face, but from the sobs he could tell it was the voice of Shi Kefa. Lifting up his hands, he pried his eyelids open with the last ounce of his strength; a pair of angry eyes bored into Shi Kefa, seemingly ready to breathe fire.

"Fool!" Zuo Guangdou scolded. "Do you realize what kind of place this is? Why have you come? The country is in such a sorry state and I am finished. Now you have risked your life to come here. If you are found out, who will be left to carry on our cause?"

When Shi Kefa couldn't stop his sobbing, Zuo Guangdou said harshly, "If you don't leave this moment, I will take care of you myself to save the crooks trouble." Thereupon he picked up the leg irons at his side and made as if to hurl them at Shi Kefa.

Afraid to say a word more, Shi Kefa, repressing his sorrow and pain, left the prison.

A few days later, Zuo Guangdou and Yang Lian were killed by Wei Zhongxian. By bribing the prison guard again, Shi Kefa was able to obtain the remains of Zuo Guangdou for burial. Whenever the last scene in the cell came back to him, Shi Kefa would say, with tears streaming down his face, "My mentor's heart must be made of iron and stone."

15、袁崇焕大战宁远

当魏忠贤的阉党把明朝朝政闹得乌烟瘴气的时候，后金大汗努尔哈赤正不断在辽东进攻明军。萨尔浒大战以后，明王朝派了一位老将熊廷弼出关指挥辽东军事。熊廷弼是个很有才能的将领，可是担任广宁（今辽宋北镇）巡抚的王化贞却认为熊廷弼出关，影响了他的地位，千方百计阻挠熊廷弼的指挥。公元1622年，努尔哈赤向广宁进攻，王化贞带头逃进关内。熊廷弼无法抵御，只好保护一些百姓退到山海关内。

广宁失守，明王朝不分青红皂白，把熊廷弼和王化贞一起打进大牢。魏忠贤趁机向熊廷弼敲诈勒索，要熊廷弼拿出四万两银子，才免他死罪。熊廷弼是个正派人，哪来这些钱，当然拒绝。阉党就诬陷熊廷弼贪污军饷，把他处死。

明王朝杀了熊廷弼，派谁去抵抗后金军呢？掌管军事的兵部衙门正在着急，恰恰在这个时候，主事（官名）袁崇焕忽然失

15. The Battle of Ningyuan

In the period when Wei Zhongxian was making a stinking mess of Ming politics, Nurhaci, the Great Khan of the Later Jin, stepped up his attacks against Ming troops in Liaodong. In the wake of the Battle of Sarhu, the Ming government appointed Xiong Tingbi, a veteran general, to the defense of Liaodong. Xiong was an outstanding commander but Wang Huazhen, the Grand Coordinator of Guangning in Liaoning Province, did his best to put a stick in the spokes of Xiong's command for fear that Xiong's posting would erode his own influence and position. During an offensive launched by Nurhaci against Guangning in 1622, Wang Huazhen fled south into China proper, leaving General Xiong too weak to counter the offensive. Xiong had no alternative but to retreat with some of the inhabitants to the safety inside Shanhai Pass.

With the fall of Guangning, the Ming government indiscriminately threw both Xiong Tingbi and Wang Huazhen into jail. Wei Zhongxian pounced on this opportunity to extort money from Xiong, threatening capital punishment unless he paid 40,000 taels of silver. Xiong Tingbi, who was a man of integrity with modest means, categorically refused. The Castratists had him executed on the trumped-up charge of having stolen from troop pay.

With the execution of General Xiong, who was going to lead the fight against the Jin army? While the War Ministry was fretting about a replacement, it suddenly realized an

踪。衙门里的人找到他家里，家里的人也不知道他的去向。过了几天，袁崇焕才回来，原来他看到国事危急，单独一个人骑着马到山海关外视察去了。

袁崇焕详细研究了关内外的形势，回来向兵部尚书孙承宗报告，并且说：“只要给我人马军饷，我能负责守住辽东。”

一些朝廷大臣正被后金的攻势吓破了胆，听说袁崇焕自告奋勇，也都赞成让袁崇焕去试一试。明熹宗批准给他二十万饷银，要他负责督率关外的明军。

关外经过几年战争，一片荒凉，遍地都是死亡兵士的尸骨，加上冰天雪地，野兽横行，环境十分艰苦。袁崇焕出关后，带着几个随从兵士，连夜在荒野上骑马奔驰，天没亮就到了宁远（今辽宁兴城）的前屯。他在那里收容难民，修筑工事。那里的将士对袁崇焕的勇气和毅力，没有一个不钦佩的。

袁崇焕在关外，经过一番实地考察，决心派兵进驻宁远，在那里修筑防守工事。他把他的主张报告朝廷后，立刻得到孙承宗的支持。

administrative aide, Yuan Chonghuan, was missing. His family told ministry officials that they were unaware of his whereabouts. Yuan Chonghuan reappeared a few days later. Worried by the critical situation of the Ming, he had ventured unaccompanied beyond Shanhai Pass on his horse to do some reconnaissance.

Yuan Chonghuan reported his assessment of the situation inside and outside the pass to Sun Chengzong, the Minister of War.

"If I am given the troops and their pay," he concluded, "I will assume the responsibility of defending Liaodong."

When ministers unnerved by the offensives of the Later Jin heard about Yuan Chonghuan's volunteering to assume the defense of Liaodong, they were all for supporting his attempt. Emperor Xizong approved 200,000 taels of silver in troop pay and gave him command of the Ming troops stationed in the northeast.

In the aftermath of several years of war, the areas beyond Shanhai Pass were largely laid to waste and strewn with the bodies of dead combatants. The freezing weather, the snow, and the feral beasts roaming the landscape added to the harshness of life. Yuan Chonghuan rode with a number of soldiers out of Shanhai Pass. After traveling all night across the vast, uninhabited northeastern land, they arrived before the first light of dawn at the forward outpost of Ningyuan, modern-day Xingcheng of Liaoning Province. There they began taking in refugees and fortifying defensive works. Yuan Chonghuan's courage, willpower and tenacity brought him the respect and admiration of his troops and superiors.

After surveying the situation in Liaodong, Yuan Chonghuan decided to station troops in Ningyuan and build fortifications there. He submitted his proposal to the central government and won immediate support from Sun Chengzong.

袁崇焕在宁远筑起三丈二尺高、二丈宽的城墙，装备了各种火器、火炮。孙承宗还派了几支人马分驻在宁远附近的锦州、松山等地方，声援宁远。

袁崇焕号令严明，受到军民的爱戴。关外各地的商人听说宁远防守巩固，从四面八方拥到宁远来。辽东的危急局面很快扭转过来。

正当孙承宗、袁崇焕守卫辽东有了进展的时候，却遭到魏忠贤的猜忌。魏忠贤唆使阉党说了孙承宗不少坏话，孙承宗被迫离职。

魏忠贤排挤了孙承宗，派了他们的同党高第指挥辽东军事。高第是个庸碌无能的家伙，他一到山海关，就召集将领开会，说后金军太厉害，关外没法防守，要各路明军全部撤进山海关内。

袁崇焕坚决反对撤兵，他说：“我们好不容易在关外站稳脚跟，哪能轻易放弃！”

高第硬要袁崇焕放弃宁远。袁崇焕气愤地说：“我的职守是防守宁远，要死也死在那里，决不后撤。”

Yuan Chonghuan erected a wall ten meters high and six meters thick around Ningyuan, on which were mounted various kinds of weapons and cannons. Sun Chengzong deployed contingents to nearby towns, including Jinzhou and Songshan to serve as support for Ningyuan.

Yuan Chonghuan endeared himself to the populace and the military by enforcing a strict discipline over his troops. Traders across Liaodong, drawn by the security offered by the fortification of Ningyuan defenses, brought their business to the city. Soon Liaodong's critical security situation was turned around.

By making headway in Liaodong defenses, Sun Chengzong and Yuan Chonghuan earned the ill will of Wei Zhongxian, who succeeded in forcing Sun Chengzong out of his post of minister of war by mobilizing his partisans to mount a mudslinging campaign against him.

After getting rid of Sun Chengzong, Wei Zhongxian put his partisan Gao Di in command of Liaodong defenses. No sooner had the feckless, incompetent Gao Di arrived at Shanhai Pass to assume command, than he summoned his commanders and told them the Jin force was too strong for Ming troops to resist outside the pass and therefore all Ming forces were to pull back inside Shanhai Pass.

Yuan Chonghuan was dead set against the idea of withdrawal, arguing, "We have solidified our foothold in Liaodong at great pains. We can't sacrifice our hard-won gains so lightly."

Gao Di insisted that Yuan Chonghuan abandon Ningyuan.

"My duty is to defend Ningyuan," said Yuan indignantly. "I'd sooner die in Ningyuan than withdraw."

Unable to hudge Yuan Chonghuan, Gao Di allowed him to

高第说不服袁崇焕，只好答应袁崇焕带领一部分明军留在宁远，却下命令关外其他地区的明军，限期撤退到关内。这道命令下得十分突然，各地守军毫无准备，匆匆忙忙地退兵，把储存在关外的十几万担军粮丢得精光。

努尔哈齐看到明军撤退的狼狈相，认为明朝容易对付，公元1626年，他亲自率领十三万大军，渡过辽河，进攻宁远。

那时候，守在宁远周围几个据点的明军都已经撤走，宁远城只剩下一万多兵士，处境十分孤立，但是袁崇焕并不气馁。他咬破指头，写了一份誓死抗金的血书，给将士们看，并且说了一番激励大家的话。将士们听了，都感动得热血沸腾，纷纷表示一定跟着袁将军一起死守宁远。

接着，袁崇焕就命令城外百姓全部带了粮食，用具撤进城里，把城外的民房烧掉，叫后金军队来了没有粮食和掩体。他向城里的官员分派了任务，有的管军粮供应，有的清查内奸。他还发信给山海关的明军守将，如果发现宁远逃回关内的官兵，要他们就地处斩。这几道命令一下，宁远的人心都安定下来，大家除了一心一意守城杀敌之外，没有别的念头。

过了二十来天，努尔哈齐带领后金军气势汹汹地到了宁远城下。大批后金兵士头顶盾牌，冒着明军的箭石，炮火，猛烈攻城。明军虽然英勇抵抗，但是后金兵倒下一批，又来一批。在这

remain in Ningyuan with some troops but set a deadline for Ming forces to withdraw from all other locations to south of Shanhai Pass. As the order was issued at short notice, the Ming troops made a hasty withdrawal, leaving behind five million kilos of military rations.

The disorganized withdrawal of the Ming troops convinced Nurhaci that it would be easy to deal with the Ming. In 1626, he led a 130,000-strong force across the Liao River to attack Ningyuan.

With Ming troops already pulled from surrounding positions, Ningyuan had to defend itself with a paltry ten thousand troops without any external support. But Yuan Chonghuan refused to lose heart. Drawing blood by biting on a finger, he wrote in blood a vow to fight the Jin to his last breath and showed it to his troops as he gave his pre-battle speech. The troops were roused to redoubled ardor and vowed to stand by General Yuan in the defense of the city.

Yuan Chonghuan instructed inhabitants outside the city walls to move into the city with all their food and implements and to torch their houses in order to deny Jin troops food and cover. He assigned duties to city officials, some charged with rations and supplies, some with ferreting out traitors. He wrote to the commanding officer at Shanhai Pass with instructions to summarily execute any deserter from Ningyuan. This had a calming effect on the city: people now entertained no other thought than that of the defense of their city against the enemy.

Twenty days later, Nurhaci arrived with his awesome force. The Jin troops, in massive numbers, stormed the city behind their shields, braving the hails of arrows, rocks and cannonballs unleashed by the Ming defenders. Although the Ming troops put

紧急的关头，袁崇焕下令动用早就准备好的大炮，向后金军发射。炮声响处，只见一团火焰，后金兵士被轰得血肉横飞，留下的也被迫后撤。

第二天，努尔哈赤亲自督战，集中大股兵力攻城。袁崇焕登上城楼瞭望台，沉着地监视后金军的行动。直等到后金军冲到逼近城墙的地方，他才命令炮手瞄准敌人密集的地方发炮。这一炮使后金军受到更大伤亡。正在后面督战的努尔哈赤也受了重伤，不得不下令撤退。

袁崇焕听到敌人退兵，就乘胜杀出城去，一直追赶了三十里，才得胜回城。

努尔哈赤受了重伤，回到沈阳，跟他的部下说：“我从二十五岁以来，战无不胜，攻无不克，没想小小的宁远城攻不下来。”他又气又伤心，加上伤势越来越重，拖了几天，就咽了气。他的第八个儿子皇太极接替他做了后金大汗。

up a valiant fight, the enemy onslaught was relentless, as fallen enemy soldiers were quickly replaced by more troops. At the critical moment, Yuan Chonghuan ordered the great cannons into action. Jin troops were blown to pieces in fiery explosions as the cannons were fired at them. The remaining Jin army beat a retreat.

The next day, Nurhaci led a massive assault upon the city. Yuan Chonghuan climbed up to the observatory tower atop the embattlements to watch calmly the movements of the Jin force. When the Jin troops came very close to the walls, he ordered his soldiers to fire their cannons at the dense concentrations of enemy soldiers, inflicting heavy casualties. Nurhaci was badly wounded in the battle and had to call off the attack.

Yuan Chonghuan seized the momentum of victory and gave chase with his troops, returning triumphantly to the city only after pursuing the enemy force over a distance of a dozen miles.

The badly wounded Nurhaci said to his subalterns upon their return to Shenyang, "I've been an invincible commander since the age of 25, never losing a battle. I can't accept that I wasn't able to conquer a small town like Ningyuan." A few days later, Nurhaci died from his festering wound and his anger and sorrow. His eighth son Hung Taiji (also known as Huang Taiji) succeeded him as Great Khan of the Later Jin.

16、皇太极施反间计

努尔哈赤受重伤死去以后，袁崇焕为了探听后金的动静，特地派使者到沈阳去吊丧，皇太极对袁崇焕窝了一肚子的怨恨，但是因为后金刚打败仗，需要休整，再说也想试探一下明朝的态度，所以，不但接待了袁崇焕的使者，还派使者到宁远去表示答谢。双方表面上缓和下来，背地里都在加紧准备下一步的战斗。

到了第二年，皇太极亲自率领大军，攻打明军。后金军分兵三路南下，先把锦州城包围起来。袁崇焕料定皇太极的目标是宁远，决定自己留在宁远，派部将带领四千骑兵援救锦州。果然，援兵还没出发，皇太极已经分兵攻打宁远。袁崇焕亲自到城头上督率将士守城，用大炮猛轰后金军，城外的明军援军也和城里内外夹击，把后金军赶跑了。

皇太极又把人马撤到锦州，但是锦州的明军守得严严实实，

16. Hung Taiji Sows Disinformation

After Nurhaci died of his wounds, Yuan Chonghuan sent an envoy to Shenyang to offer his condolences, with the unspoken intention of sizing up the situation in the Later Jin. While Hung Taiji nursed a bitter grudge against Yuan Chonghuan, the Later Jin needed time to recover from its recent military setback. Hung Taiji also wanted to probe Ming intentions. He therefore not only received the envoy of Yuan Chonghuan, but also dispatched his own emissary to Ningyuan to express his thanks. Behind the facade of reconciliation, both sides were actively preparing for the next confrontation.

The following year, Hung Taiji led a massive attack against the Ming. The Jin troops marched south along three routes and laid siege to Jinzhou. Yuan Chonghuan was certain that Hung Taiji's real target was Ningyuan, so he decided to stay to defend the city and sent his subalterns to relieve Jinzhou with four thousand cavalymen. As predicted by Yuan, even before the departure of the Jinzhou relief force, Hung Taiji had launched a simultaneous attack against Ningyuan. Yuan Chonghuan directed the battle from the ramparts and ordered heavy artillery fire against the Jin troops; Ming reinforcements outside the city in coordination with the city defenders drove off the Jin attackers.

Hung Taiji pulled back his army to Jinzhou but the Ming

加上天气转暖，后金军士气低落，皇太极只好退兵。

袁崇焕又打了一个大胜仗。但是，魏忠贤阉党却把功劳记在自己名下，反而责怪袁崇焕没有亲自救锦州是失职。袁崇焕知道魏忠贤有心跟他为难，只好辞职。

公元1627年，昏庸的明熹宗死去，他的弟弟朱由检即位，就是明思宗，也叫崇祯帝（崇祯是年号）。

崇祯帝早就了解魏忠贤作恶多端，民愤太大。他一即位，就宣布了魏忠贤的罪状，把魏忠贤充军到凤阳。魏忠贤自己知道活不成，走到半路上自杀了。

崇祯帝惩治了阉党，又给杨涟、左光斗等人平反了冤狱，很想振作一番。许多大臣请求把袁崇焕召回朝廷。崇祯帝接受了这个意见，提拔袁崇焕为兵部尚书，负责指挥整个河北、辽东的军事。崇祯帝还亲自召见袁崇焕，问他有什么计划。袁崇焕说：“只要给我指挥权，朝廷各部一致配合，不出五年，可以恢复辽东。”

defense of Jinzhou proved impregnable. The warming weather also depressed the Jin troops. Hung Taiji decided to withdraw his army.

Although Yuan Chonghuan won another major victory, the partisans of Wei Zhongxian took the credit for themselves and faulted Yuan for dereliction of duty by not having personally led the relief of Jinzhou. Realizing Wei Zhongxian was bent on making his life difficult, Yuan Chonghuan decided to resign.

In 1627, the weak and inept Emperor Xizong died and was succeeded by his brother Zhu Jian as Emperor Sizong of Ming, also known as Emperor Chongzhen (Chongzhen being an era name of his).

Emperor Chongzhen had long been aware of the depth of popular anger at the evil Wei Zhongxian. Upon his accession he lost no time in announcing the crimes of Wei and exiled him to garrison duty in Fengyang. Knowing he was not going to survive, Wei Zhongxian committed suicide on the way to exile.

Emperor Chongzhen outlawed Wei Zhongxian's Castratist Clique and overturned the wrongful convictions leading to the imprisonment of Yang Lian and Zuo Guangdou. He was determined to thoroughly clean house. Many high officials petitioned him to call Yuan Chonghuan back to government service at the Ming court. Emperor Chongzhen followed this advice by promoting Yuan Chonghuan to Minister of War in charge of the defenses of Hebei and Liaodong. Emperor Chongzhen also received Yuan Chonghuan in person and asked him about his plans.

"If I am given the authority and assured of the support of other ministries and department of the government," said Yuan Chonghuan, "I will be able to recover Liaodong within five years."

Emperor Chongzhen exulted over the prospect and gave Yuan

崇祯帝听了十分兴奋，给袁崇焕一口尚方宝剑，准许他全权行事。

袁崇焕重新回到宁远，选拔将才，整顿队伍，军纪严明，士气振奋。东江总兵毛文龙作战不力，虚报军功，不服从袁崇焕的指挥。袁崇焕使用尚方剑，把毛文龙杀了。

皇太极打了败仗，当然不肯罢休，他知道宁远、锦州防守严密，决定改变进兵路线。他作好一切准备，公元1629年十月，率领几十万后金军，从龙井关、大安口（今河北遵化北）绕到河北，直扑明朝京城北京。

这一招可出乎袁崇焕的意外。袁崇焕赶快出发，想在半路上把后金军拦住，已经来不及了。后金军乘虚而入，到了北京郊外。袁崇焕得到情报，心急火燎带着明军赶了两天两夜，到了北京，没顾上休息，就和后金军展开激烈的战斗。别路明军，也陆续赶到，投入战斗。

后金军突然进攻北京，引起了全城震动。崇祯帝更是急得心慌意乱，不知该怎么办才好，后来听说袁崇焕带兵赶到，心

Chonghuan a *shang fang bao jian* (an imperial sword conferring supreme authority on the person carrying it), investing him with full power.

After returning to Ningyuan in his new capacity, Yuan Chonghuan promoted deserving commanders, streamlined troops and enforced discipline. Morale soared as a result. Mao Wenlong, the regional commander of Dongjiang, was killed by Yuan Chonghuan's *shang fang bao jian* because of poor performance in battle, inflated account of battle successes and insubordination to Yuan Chonghuan.

Hung Taiji was naturally determined not to passively accept defeat. Realizing Ningyuan and Jinzhou were well-defended, he decided to modify his route of attack. After meticulous preparations, he took his hundreds of thousands of troops in October 1629 on a circuitous route through Longjing Pass and Da'an kou (north of modern Zunhua of Hebei Province) to enter Hebei and head directly toward the Ming capital of Beijing.

This caught Yuan Chonghuan by surprise, and by the time he rushed his troops to block the advance of the invasion force it was already too late. The Jin troops cut through territory little defended by Ming troops, and soon entered the outskirts of Beijing. When news reached Yuan Chonghuan, he rushed with his troops toward Beijing. Arriving after two days of forced march, without pausing for rest, he engaged the Jin army in fierce combat. Ming troops coming from other locations later joined the battle.

The surprise Jin attack against Beijing sent a shock wave through the city. Emperor Chongzhen was flustered and at a loss as to what to do. He calmed down somewhat when he learned of the arrival of Yuan Chonghuan's reinforcements. He received

才定了一些，他亲自召见袁崇焕，慰劳了一番。但是一些魏忠贤的余党却散布谣言，说这次后金兵绕道进京，完全是袁崇焕引进来的，说不定里面还有什么阴谋呢。

崇祯帝是个猜疑心极重的人，听了这些谣言，也有些怀疑起来。正在这个时候，有一个被金兵俘虏去的太监从金营逃了回来，向崇祯帝密告，说袁崇焕和皇太极已经订下密约，要出卖北京。这个消息简直像晴天霹雳，把崇祯帝惊呆了。

原来，明朝有两个太监被后金军俘虏去以后，被关在金营里。有天晚上，一个姓杨的太监半夜醒来，听见两个看守他们的金兵在外面轻声地谈话。

一个金兵说：“今天咱们临阵退兵，完全是皇上（指皇太极）的意思，你可知道？”

另一个说：“你是怎么知道的？”

一个又说：“刚才我就看到皇上一个人骑着马朝着明营走，明营里也有两个人骑马过来，跟皇上谈了好半天话才回去。听说那两人就是袁将军派来的，他已经跟皇上有密约，眼看大事就要成功啦……”

姓杨的太监偷听了这番对话，趁看守他的金兵不注意，偷偷地逃了出来，赶快跑回皇宫，向崇祯帝报告。崇祯帝听了也信以为真。他哪里知道，这个情报完全是假的。两个金兵的谈话是皇太极预先布置的。

Yuan Chonghuan to express gratitude to the troops. But some holdovers of Wei Zhongxian's clique started rumors that the Jin troops attacking Beijing by taking a roundabout route did so with Yuan Chonghuan's help. They insinuated there was some kind of intrigue involved.

Emperor Chongzhen, who was a paranoid person, began to be swayed by these rumors. At his time a eunuch captured by the Jin escaped from the Jin camp and reported to Emperor Chongzhen that Yuan Chonghuan had concluded a secret pact with Hung Taiji promising to surrender Beijing to him. This information hit Emperor Chongzhen like a bolt out of the sky. He was flabbergasted.

In fact, two eunuchs of the Ming court had been captured and detained in the Jin camp. A eunuch named Yang woke up one night and overheard their captors talking in hushed tones outside.

"Do you know that it was the emperor (meaning Hung Taiji) who decided to suspend the attack today?" one Jin soldier said.

Another soldier asked, "How do you know?"

Yet another soldier said, "I just saw our emperor ride alone toward the Ming camp and two persons rode out from the Ming barracks to meet him. They talked to him for quite a while before returning to their camp. I heard that those two had been sent by General Yuan, who had concluded a secret pact with our emperor. It seems the deal has been clinched..."

The eunuch who overheard the conversation escaped the Jin camp in a moment of distraction on the part of his captors and hurried to the palace to report it to the emperor. Emperor Chongzhen bought the story, little knowing that it was disinformation deliberately fed to the Ming through the guards' conversation staged by Hung Taiji.

崇禎帝命令袁崇煥馬上進宮。袁崇煥接到命令，也不知道發生了什么事，匆忙進了宮。崇禎帝拉長了臉，黃向說：“袁崇煥，你為什麼要擅自杀死大将毛文龙？为什么金兵到了北京，你的援兵还迟迟不来？”

袁崇煥不禁怔了一下，这些话都是从哪儿说起？他正想答辩，崇禎帝已经喝令锦衣卫把袁崇煥捆绑起来，押进大牢。有个大臣知道袁崇煥平日忠心为国，觉得事情蹊跷，劝崇禎帝说：“请陛下慎重考虑啊！”

崇禎帝说：“什么慎重不慎重？慎重只会误事。”崇禎帝拒绝大臣的劝告，一些魏忠贤余党又趁机诬陷，到了第二年，崇禎帝终于下令把袁崇煥杀了。

皇太极用反间计除了对手袁崇煥，退兵回到盛京，打那以后，后金越来越强大，到了公元1635年，皇太极把女真改称满洲，又过了一年，皇太极在盛京称帝，改国号叫清。这就是清太宗。

Emperor Chongzhen summoned Yuan Chonghuan immediately. Completely unaware, Yuan Chonghuan hurried to the palace.

"Yuan Chonghuan!" The stern-faced Emperor Chongzhen asked reproachfully, "Why did you kill General Mao Wenlong without authorization? Why were your troops late in coming to the rescue of Beijing after the Jin launched an attack on the capital?"

Yuan Chonghuan gave a start, mystified by the accusations. Before he had time to reply to the charges, Emperor Chongzhen had already ordered the "Embroidered Coats" (secret service) to tie him up and throw him in jail.

A minister who knew Yuan Chonghuan had always been a devoted patriot, felt that something didn't add up.

"His Majesty may want to proceed with prudence on this matter," he urged Emperor Chongzhen.

"Prudence my foot!" declared the emperor. "Prudence can only bring disaster."

Emperor Chongzhen refused to heed the advice of his ministers; some remnant partisans of Wei Zhongxian also jumped on the anti-Yuan Chonghuan bandwagon. The next year Emperor Chongzhen ordered Yuan Chonghuan executed.

After successfully eliminating his nemesis, Yuan Chonghuan, through a stratagem of sowing distrust and suspicion in the Ming court, Hung Taiji took his troops back to Shengjing. The Later Jin's strength grew steadily from that time. In 1635, Hung Taiji changed the name of Jurchen to Manchu. A year later, Hung Taiji proclaimed himself emperor of Shengjing and changed the dynasty name to Qing. He became Emperor Taizong of Qing.

17、闯王李自成

崇祯帝即位的第二年，公元1628年，陕西闹了一场大饥荒。老百姓没粮吃，连草根树皮也掘光了，只好吃山上的泥土。但是一些地方官吏，照样催租逼税，叫老百姓没法忍受下去。陕西各地爆发了农民起义。

这年冬天，明王朝从甘肃调了一支军队到北京去。这支军队开到金县（今陕西榆林），兵士们领不到饷，闹到县衙门去。带兵的将官出来弹压，有个年轻兵士气愤地站出来，带领兵士们把将官和县官杀了。这个兵士就是李自成。

李自成是陕西米脂人，出生在一个农民家庭，少年时候，就喜欢骑马射箭，练得一身好武艺。后来，父亲死了，家境穷困，李自成到银川驿站里去当马夫。他待人热情，驿卒们也挺爱戴他。

李自成的家一向担负代官府收租税的差使。米脂连年收成不好，农民拿不出租税。当地有个姓艾的大地主，乘机放高利

17. Li Zicheng, the Trailblazing King

In 1628, the second year of Emperor Chongzhen's reign, famine broke out in Shaanxi. After eating all the grass roots and tree bark, the hungry populace was reduced to eating earth in the hills. This did not prevent some local government officials from demanding land tax and other levies, and life became unbearable for the people. Soon, peasant rebellions erupted across Shaanxi.

In the winter of that year, the Ming court ordered a troop contingent to redeploy from Gansu to Beijing. When the contingent reached Jin County, modern Yulin of Shaanxi Province, the soldiers, who had not received their pay, took their complaint to the county government, where they raised a stink. When high officials tried to quash the unrest by force, a young soldier stepped forward and led his fellow soldiers in a mutiny, killing both their generals and the county magistrate. The young soldier's name was Li Zicheng.

Li Zicheng was born to a peasant family in Mizhi, Shaanxi. He had loved to ride and shoot arrows since childhood and had become an accomplished warrior. After the death of his father, Li Zicheng became a horse groom at a post house in Yinchuan to escape the poverty of his family. His friendly disposition endeared him to the runners at the post.

Li Zicheng's family used to collect rent for the government. After years of poor harvests, the peasants of Mizhi were no longer

货，想在农民身上盘剥。李自成看大家交不起租税，就自己一个人借了债把税交了。过了一段时间，姓艾的地主逼李自成还债，李自成还不起，姓艾的就唆使官府把他抓起来打得半死，还锁上镣铐，把他放在太阳底下晒，不让吃东西。百姓和驿卒向县官恳求把李自成放在树荫下，让他吃点东西，县官也不答应。这一下把群众激怒了，大家一哄而上，砸开李自成身上的镣铐，带着李自成一起逃出米脂，到甘肃当了兵。

这一回，李自成在金县杀了将官，带着几十个兵士一起投奔王左挂领导的农民军，当上一名头领。

明王朝派出的总督杨鹤看到起义军越来越多，十分害怕。他一面派兵镇压，一面用高官厚禄招降农民军将领。王左挂禁不住诱惑，动摇投降了。李自成不得不另找队伍。后来，他打听到高迎祥领导一支队伍起义，自称“闯王”，就决心投奔高迎祥。

高迎祥听到李自成带兵来投奔，十分高兴，马上叫他担任一个队的将官，大家把他叫做闯将。

able to pay land rent. A large landowner named Ai, seeking to profit from this situation, lent money to the peasants at exorbitant rates. Li Zicheng knew the peasants could not come up with the money to pay their land tax, so he borrowed from Ai and paid the tax on the peasants' behalf. After some time, the landowner named Ai pressed Li Zicheng for repayment of the debt. Li did not have the money to pay back the loan. Ai sent bailiffs to take him into custody and beat him senseless. He was then shackled and left to bake under the sun without any food. When the local people and the runners of the post house entreated the county magistrate to move Li Zicheng to the shade and give Li something to eat, the county magistrate refused. This provoked the anger of the crowd, who surged forward and shattered the shackles on Li Zicheng. They took him from Mizhi to Gansu, where he became a soldier.

After Li Zicheng killed his superior officers in Jin County, he took dozens of soldiers with him to join the peasant militia led by Wang Zuogua and became a leader of the militia troops.

Yang He, the governor appointed by the Ming government, was frightened by the proliferation of insurgencies. He coupled armed repression with a policy of co-opting commanders of peasant militias with promises of high positions and money. Wang Zuogua could not resist these temptations and surrendered, forcing Li Zicheng to find another perch. He eventually decided to join the insurgency of Gao Yingxiang, who called himself "Chuang Wang" or "Trailblazing King".

Gao Yingxiang was pleased to have Li Zicheng and his men join his organization, and made him commanding general of a regiment. People took to calling Li Zicheng *Chuang Jiang*, "Trailblazing General".

高迎祥和别的起义军联合起来，转战山西、河北等五个省，声势越来越大。官军到处围剿，遭到失败。最后，崇祯帝恼羞成怒，调动了各省官军，想把各路起义军全部包围，一口吃掉。

为了对付官军围剿，高迎祥约了十三家起义军的大小头领在荥阳开会，商量对策。

荥阳大会上，大家议论纷纷。有的认为敌人兵力太强，不如打回陕西老家避一避再说，也有的不同意，但是也拿不出更好的主意。这时候，李自成站起来说：“一个兵士肯拼命，也能奋战一下，我们有十万大军，敌人能拿我们怎么样？”

高迎祥赞许地说：“依你的意思，该怎么办？”

李自成提出自己的主张，他认为起义军应该分成几路，分头出击，打破敌人的围剿。大家听了，都觉得李自成说得有理。经过一番商量，十三家起义军分成六路。有的拖住敌军，有的流动作战。高迎祥、李自成和另一支由张献忠领导的起义军向东打出包围圈，直取江淮地区的风阳。

风阳是明太祖朱元璋的老家。明太祖死后，那里成为明朝的中都。农民军出击风阳，就是要打击明王朝的气焰。

Gao Yingxiang's insurgency, in alliance with other insurgencies operated in five provinces including Shanxi and Hebei, continued to expand. The government forces' pacification and encirclement attempts were thwarted. In frustration, Emperor Chongzhen gave orders to all the government forces in various provinces to encircle and wipe out the insurgents in one fell swoop.

To counter the government plan, Gao Yingxiang called a meeting of commanders from thirteen insurgencies at Xingyang to thrash out a response.

The discussion at Xingyang was lively. Some believed that the enemy was too powerful and they should fight their way back to their home villages in Shaanxi and lie low for a while; others disagreed but could offer no better alternatives. Li Zicheng rose to his feet.

"If a soldier is willing to risk his life, he has a fighting chance," he said. "We have a hundred thousand men. What can the enemy do to us?"

Gao Yingxiang said approvingly. "What do you propose then?"

Li Zicheng proposed that the insurgents should divide into several strands, each attacking in a different direction. This way they would have a better chance of breaching the encirclement. There was general agreement with the idea. After some consultation, the thirteen insurgencies were organized into six armies. Some were tasked with pinning enemy forces down and others were to fight a mobile war. The troops of Gao Yingxiang, Li Zicheng and Zhang Xianzhong would break through the enemy encirclement in the east and head to Fengyang near the confluence of the Huai River and the Yangtze.

Fengyang was the home town of Zhu Yuanzhang, Emperor

高迎祥、张献忠领导的起义军一路进军，势如破竹，不到十天，就打下了凤阳，把明朝皇帝的祖坟和朱元璋做过和尚的皇觉寺一把火烧了。这一招真的震动了明王朝朝廷，崇祯帝听到这消息，又急又气，下令把凤阳巡抚处死。

高迎祥和李自成又带兵回到陕西，来回打击官军，让明朝的官员手忙脚乱，狼狈不堪。崇祯帝和地方大臣都把高迎祥的队伍看成眼中钉，千方百计要消灭他们。有一次，高迎祥带兵进攻西安。陕西巡抚孙传庭在周至（今陕西周至）的山谷里埋下伏兵拦截。高迎祥没有防备，经过一场激战，被捕牺牲。

李自成带领留下的队伍杀了出来。将士们失去了主帅，心里十分沉痛。大伙认为闯将李自成是高迎祥最信任的将领，加上他武艺高强，打仗勇敢，就拥戴他接替高迎祥，做了闯王。打那以后，李闯王名声就在远近传开了。

Taizu of Ming. It became the "Middle Capital" of the Ming after Emperor Taizu's death. The peasant insurgents intended to humble the Ming court by attacking Fengyang.

The insurgents led by Gao Yingxiang and Zhang Xianzhong cut through Ming defense like a hot knife through butter. In less than ten days, they captured Fengyang and burned down the ancestral tombs of the Ming royal house as well as Huangjue Temple, where Zhu Yuanzhang was once a monk. This was a serious blow to the Ming court. When Emperor Chongzhen learned of the fall of Fengyang, he was so furious he had the Grand Coordinator of Fengyang executed.

Gao Yingxiang and Li Zicheng marched their troops back to Shaanxi. They continued their roving attacks on government troops, keeping them overstretched and on the defensive. Emperor Chongzhen and local government officials considered the insurgents a thorn in their side and vowed to wipe them out. Once, Gao Yingxiang marched his troops on Xi'an and walked into an ambush near Zhouzhi (modern-day Zhouzhi of Shaanxi Province) laid by Sun Chuanting, the Grand Coordinator of Shaanxi. Caught by surprise, Gao Yingxiang was captured and killed after a fierce battle.

Li Zicheng was able to break out with the remaining troops. The death of their supreme commander was a painful loss to the men. Since Li Zicheng, the Trailblazing General, was considered by all to be Gao Yingxiang's most trusted commander and an accomplished, brave warrior, he was acclaimed by the troops as the new Chuang Wang (Trailblazing King) to take Gao Yingxiang's place. From then on, the name "Li Chuang Wang" became a household name.

李闯王的威名越高，越引起明王朝的害怕和仇恨。崇祯帝命令总督洪承畴、巡抚孙传庭专门围剿李自成。李自成的处境越来越困难。但是由于起义军将士的英勇作战和李自成的足智多谋，起义军多次冲破官军的包围圈，活跃在四川、甘肃、陕西一带，打击官军。

在这个困难的时刻，另两支起义军的首领张献忠、罗汝才都接受明朝招降，李自成手下的将领也有人叛变。这使李自成的处境增添了困难。

公元1638年，李自成从甘肃转移到陕西，准备打出潼关去。洪承畴、孙传庭事先探听到起义军的动向，在潼关附近的崇山峻岭中，布置了三道埋伏线，故意让开通向潼关的大路，引诱李自成进入他们的包围圈。

李自成中了敌人的计。当他带领起义军浩浩荡荡开到靠近潼关的山谷地带的时候，两面高山里杀出了大批明军。他们依仗人多和地势有利，向起义军发起一次次冲击。起义军经过几天几夜的搏斗，几万名战士在战斗中牺牲，队伍被打散了。

The fear and hate Li Chuang Wang inspired in the Ming court was proportional to the growth of his fame. Emperor Chongzhen ordered Governor Hong Chengchou and Grand Coordinator Sun Chuanting to devote themselves exclusively to the encirclement and destruction of Li Zicheng and Li increasingly felt the heat of their intentions. However, the valor of the insurgents and Li Zicheng's resourcefulness and astute use of tactics enabled them to breach government encirclement lines on numerous occasions and to challenge government forces in Sichuan, Gansu and Shaanxi.

During this difficult period, Zhang Xianzhong and Luo Rucui, the leaders of two other insurgencies, submitted to the Ming. Some commanders under Li Zicheng also defected. This only added to Li's growing difficulties.

In 1638, Li Zicheng moved his troops from Gansu to Shaanxi, with the intention of fighting his way out of Tongguan Pass. Tipped off about his troops' movements, Hong Chengchou and Sun Chuanting laid ambushes at three separate locations in the high mountains near Tongguan, deliberately leaving the main road leading to Tongguan free and clear for passage to lure Li Zicheng into the noose they'd prepared for him.

And Li Zicheng took the bait. When his massive insurgent force entered a valley near Tongguan, swarms of Ming troops materialized and charged down from the hills. With their advantages in numbers and terrain, the Ming army unleashed waves upon waves of assault on the insurgents. The close combat lasted several days and nights, ending in the death of tens of thousands of rebel combatants and the collapse of the insurgent army.

李自成和他的部将刘宗敏等十七个人打退了大批敌人，才冲出重重包围。他们翻山越岭，克服了重重困难，到了陕西东南的商洛山区，隐蔽起来。

明军占领了潼关，派出大批侦骑，搜捕李自成，搜了几个月，毫无信息。后来，听有人传说，李自成在战斗中受了重伤，已经死去，明军才放松了搜捕。

Only 17 insurgents, including Li Zicheng and his subaltern Liu Zongmin, succeeded in breaking out of the encirclement after beating back large numbers of Ming troops. They traveled across high mountains under extremely harsh conditions to reach the Shangluo hills in the southeastern part of Shaanxi, where they went into hiding.

After taking control of Tongguan, the Ming army sent out mounted scouts to track down Li Zicheng. The trail turned cold after months of searching. The intensive manhunt was relaxed only after the Ming army learned that Li Zicheng had reportedly died from the mortal wound he had received in the recent battle.

18、张献忠奇袭襄阳

公元1639年五月，张献忠在湖北谷城再一次起义。原来，张献忠当初在谷城接受明朝的招安，并不是真心投降，而是暗暗积蓄兵力，准备再起。明朝将领发现张献忠的意图，准备派兵镇压。张献忠先发制人，在谷城杀掉明朝县令，焚毁了官衙，重新打起了起义的旗号。不久，罗汝才也起兵响应。

明朝总兵左良玉派兵进攻，被张献忠打得一败涂地，只留下几百残兵败将逃回，气得崇祯帝把主帅熊文灿和总兵左良玉都革了职务，另派兵部尚书杨嗣昌到湖广围攻张献忠。

杨嗣昌带了崇祯帝的尚方宝剑，率领了十万人马，耀武扬威到了襄阳。他派左良玉等将领把起义军四面包围起来。张献忠转移到玛瑙山的时候，由于起义军队伍里混进了奸细，起义

18. Zhang Xianzhong's Stealth Attack on Xiangyang

In May 1639, Zhang Xianzhong launched a new rebellion in Gucheng of Hubei. His submission to the Ming had been a ruse to enable him to secretly regroup for a comeback. When Ming generals became aware of his intentions and were on the point of sending troops after him, he made a pre-emptive strike by killing the county magistrate of Gucheng and torching the county government house before relaunching his rebellion. Soon Luo Rucai raised arms in his support.

Zuo Liangyu, a regional commander of the Ming, sent his troops to confront Zhang Xianzhong. Zhang succeeded in defeating Zuo Liangyu's force and only a few hundred Ming troops survived and fled back. In a rage, Emperor Chongzhen sacked both the supreme commander Xiong Wencai and the regional commander Zuo Liangyu. He dispatched Yang Sichang, the Minister of War, to besiege Zhang Xianzhong's stronghold in the Huguang area.

With the "shang fang bao jian" (sword of imperial authority) given to him by the emperor and a hundred thousand troops under his command, Yang Sichang arrived in Xiangyang amid great fanfare. He ordered his commanders, including Zuo Liangyu, to hem in the insurgents from all sides. When Zhang Xianzhong moved his troops to Manuo Hills, they were lured into an enemy trap by a hidden traitor who had infiltrated their ranks. The

军陷人敌**人包围圈里**，被左良玉军打败，损失了大量金银、战马。张献忠的妻子、儿子也被俘虏。

张献忠带了一千名骑兵，从湖北转移到四川。杨嗣昌跟踪追击，把行辕迁到重庆，准备在四川消灭起义军。

杨嗣昌在四川到处张榜，说有谁**能抓住张献忠**，赏给黄金万两，还封他侯爵。哪知道第二天，在杨嗣昌的行辕里，发现了许多标语，上面写着：“有能斩杨嗣昌头的，赏银三钱。”

杨嗣昌派出大批官军到处追剿起义军。张献忠起义军却是忽东忽西，叫官军捉摸不定。一直到第二年正月，官军才在开县追上起义军。当明军将领**猛如虎**、刘士杰拖着疲劳不堪的兵士赶到，张献忠的起义军绕到背后，从山上呐喊着冲了下来，官军全部崩溃，刘士杰被杀，猛如虎好不容易逃脱。起义军杀退敌人，在营里拍手唱歌：“前有**孙巡抚**（指四川巡抚邵捷庵），常来团转舞；后有**廖参军**（指监军廖大亨），不战随我行，好个杨嗣昌（指杨嗣昌）离我三尺路。”

insurgents were defeated by Zuo Liangyu's troops and lost huge amounts of gold and silver as well as a large number of battle horses. Zhang Xianzhong's wife and sons were taken prisoner in the clash.

With his one thousand cavalymen, Zhang Xianzhong retreated to Sichuan. Yang Sichang followed closely and moved his field headquarters to Chongqing, with the intention of wiping out the insurgents in Sichuan.

Yang Sichang posted a reward across Sichuan, promising ten thousand taels of gold and the title of marquis for whoever was able to capture Zhang Xianzhong. The next day, the field headquarters of Yang Sichang was found to have been plastered with posters bearing the counter-reward: "Three qian (a miniscule unit of weight) of silver for the head of Yang Sichang."

Yang Sichang sent out large forces in pursuit of the insurgents. But Zhang Xianzhong's troops were a mobile lot, never giving the government troops the satisfaction of knowing where they would crop up. It was not until January of the following year that the government troops were able to catch up with the insurgents. When the exhausted troops led by the Ming generals Meng Ruhu and Liu Shijie came near, Zhang Xianzhong's force, outflanking the government troops, came charging down the hills behind them, amid loud battle cries. The government force crumbled, with Liu Shijie killed in battle and Meng Ruhu escaping by the skin of his teeth. Having beaten back the enemy, the insurgents sang, clapping their hands.

"First there was this Grand Coordinator of Sichuan named Shao, who often ran in circles about us; then there was this Adjutant Liao, who fell in line without a fight; good old Minister Yang is three feet away."

这支歌谣传到明军那里，使杨嗣昌听了哭笑不得。

公元1641年，张献忠发现杨嗣昌把重兵都放到四川，襄阳兵力空虚，就摆脱明军，突然带兵离开四川，往东转移，一天一夜急行三四百里，把杨嗣昌大军远远甩在后边。到了湖北当阳，遇到另一支明军堵截，张献忠把罗汝才留在当阳，亲自率领精锐部队直奔襄阳。

杨嗣昌在重庆得到消息，连忙派使者赶到襄阳，命令襄阳明军严密防守。哪里知道使者走在半路上，被起义军发现抓了起来。起义军在使者身上搜到了令牌、文书，上面盖着杨嗣昌行轍的大印。张献忠把他的义子李定国叫来，叫他打扮为杨嗣昌使者，带了几名“随从”和令牌、文书，混进襄阳城去。

李定国带了公文、令牌，来到襄阳城边，正是夜色朦胧的时候。他在城门外向守军喊话，守城明兵听说是杨阁部派来的使者，验过令牌、文书，也没有怀疑，把李定国和随从兵士放进了城。

When the ditty reached the ears of the Ming troops, the embarrassed Yang Sichang didn't know whether to or laugh or cry.

In 1641, Zhang Xianzhong discovered that with the bulk of Yang Sichang's troops concentrated in Sichuan, there was a vacuum in Xiangyang. He shook off the pursuing Ming army and abruptly took his troops out of Sichuan and raced east, covering three to four hundred *li* of territory in a day's forced march, leaving the army of Yang Sichang in the dust. Near Dangyang of Hubei, they encountered a Ming interception force. Leaving Luo Rucui behind to face the enemy in Dangyang, Zhang Xianzhong led an elite force to continue the advance on Xiangyang.

When Yang Sichang, who was in Chongqing, learned of the development, he immediately dispatched a messenger to Xiangyang, with the order that the city ready itself for the impending attack. The messenger was discovered and detained by the insurgents as he made his way toward Xiangyang. He carried with him the official token authenticating his status as conveyer of the order and papers bearing the seal of Yang Sichang's field HQs. Zhang Xianzhong had his adoptive son, Li Dingguo, pass for Yang Sichang's messenger to gain entrance into Xiangyang with a few "aides" and his official token and documents.

It was nightfall when Li Dingguo arrived at Xiangyang with the official token and papers. He called out to the Ming troops inside the gate announcing himself as Minister Yang's messenger. After examining his official token and papers and finding them in order, the Ming guards let Li Dingguo and his accompanying soldiers into the city.

That night, the insurgents who had thus tricked their way into Xiangyang started several fires in the city. The city

当天晚上，混进襄阳的起义军兵士在城里好几处放火，全城的百姓从睡梦里惊醒，发现到处火光冲天，全城大乱。在混乱中，起义军打开城门，大队人马赶到，官军要想抵抗也来不及了。

起义军进城以后，一面派人打开监狱，救出被俘的起义兵士和家属，一面直奔襄王府，活捉了襄王朱翊铭。

张献忠坐在襄王府大堂，派兵士把朱翊铭押上堂来。朱翊铭吓得直打哆嗦，跪在地上求饶。

张献忠说：“我不要别的，只要借你的头派个用场。”

朱翊铭听说要杀他，吓得捣蒜似地磕头，说：“我宫里有金银宝器，听凭千岁搬用，只求饶命。”

张献忠哈哈大笑，说：“我进了襄阳，你的金银财宝有什么法子叫我不搬？不过，你不把头借给我，那杨嗣昌还死不了呢！”

说着，吆喝一下，把朱翊铭拉下堂去杀了。

inhabitants were roused from their sleep by the ensuing commotion and found the city engulfed in flames and plunged into chaos. Amid the confusion, the imposters opened the city gate to let in the insurgent troops. It was by then too late for the Ming defenders to put up an effective resistance.

Once in the city, the insurgents threw open the prison gate and rescued their fellow insurgents and their family from captivity. A detachment raced to the residence of Zhu Yiming, the Prince of Xiang, and took him prisoner.

Zhang Xianzhong presided in the main hall of the Prince's residence as soldiers brought him in. Zhu Yiming, shaking like a leaf, begged for his life.

Zhang Xianzhong said, "All I want is to borrow your head for a purpose I have in mind."

Terrified by this announcement of his death sentence, Zhu Yiming repeatedly knocked his head on the floor and said, "His Highness can have all the gold, silver and treasures in my palace! But please spare my life!"

Zhang Xianzhong burst into a peal of laughter and said, "I have already taken Xiangyang. All your treasures are mine for the taking anyway. But without your head, I will not be able take Yang Sichang's life."

He barked an order and Zhu Yiming was taken outside and executed.

张献忠占了襄阳，缴获了杨嗣昌储存在那里的大批粮饷、兵器，又把襄王府金库里的十几万两银子分发给当地的饥民，百姓听说处决了罪恶累累的襄王，高兴劲儿就不用提了。

张献忠攻破襄阳的消息传到四川，把杨嗣昌惊呆了。他处心积虑布置的围攻起义军的计划全部破产，特别是张献忠在他眼皮底下，来个突然袭击，使一个藩王丧了命。怎么向崇祯帝交代？

杨嗣昌丧魂落魄地从四川窜到湖北，刚到沙市，又听到了一个消息，李自成率领的起义军离开商洛山区，重振旗鼓，趁河南兵力空虚的时候，攻破洛阳，杀死福王朱常洵。这一来，杨嗣昌更是又惊又怕，他想来想去，没有出路，只好自杀。

By taking control of Xiangyang, Zhang Xianzhong seized a huge amount of war spoils in the form of troop rations and weapons stored by Yang Sichang in the city. He distributed the more than one hundred thousand taels of silver found in the vaults of the Prince of Xiang to the local famine victims. To say that the populace rejoiced at the execution of the evil Prince of Xiang would be an understatement.

Zhang Xianzhong's capture of Xiangyang stunned Yang Sichang as news traveled to Sichuan. His meticulously devised counterinsurgency plan was now in tatters. How was he going to explain to Emperor Chongzhen that right before his eyes, and on his watch, a prince of the Ming was killed in a surprise attack by Zhang Xianzhong?

The distraught Yang Sichang made his way from Sichuan to Hubei. The moment he arrived in Shashi he learned that Li Zicheng's insurgents, now regrouped and reinvigorated, had left their haunts in the mountains of Shangluo to capture Luoyang by taking advantage of the relative weakness of Ming defense in Henan. Zhu Changxun, the Prince of Fu, was killed in the battle. Shocked and terrified, Yang Sichang committed suicide, having come to the painful conclusion that there was no future for him.

19、李岩和红娘子

李自成离开商洛，到河南的时候，河南正发生一场大旱灾，成千上万饥民到处流亡。李自成一到河南，饥民听到李闯王出山的消息，纷纷前来投奔。

有一天，一群饥民拥着一个读书人模样的青年来找闯王。李自成询问来历，知道那青年叫李岩（又名李信），刚被大家从河南杞县牢里救出来。

李岩本来是杞县地方一户富户人家的儿子。前几年，当地灾荒闹得凶，好多农民断了粮。李岩拿出家里的一些粮食，接济断粮的穷人。对于一个富户子弟来说，这样做是少见的。所以，穷人们觉得李岩为人不错，称呼他“李公子”。

杞县连年灾荒，穷人已经苦得过不了日子。但是，县官照样派差役向穷人逼税逼债。李岩怕逼出事来，去见姓宋的县官，劝他暂时停止征税，还希望他拨出一部分官粮借给饥民。

19. Li Yan and the Red Lady

When Li Zicheng arrived in Henan from Shangluo, Henan was in the middle of a severe drought. Tens of thousands of famine victims roamed the land in search of food. When they learned that Li Chuang Wang, the Trailblazing King, had come down the mountains, the famished and displaced people flocked to him to join forces, for better or worse.

One day, a group of famine victims brought a young man, who appeared to be a scholar, to Chuang Wang. Li Zicheng found out after a few questions that the young man, whose name was Li Yan (also known as Li Xin), had just been rescued from the county jail of Qi County, Henan.

Li Yan was the son of a wealthy man in Qi County. A few years ago, when famine was at its worst and many peasants were no longer able to put food on the table, Li Yan helped them out with his family's grain. It was rare for someone from a wealthy family to offer relief to the hungry poor. The needy found him to be a decent man and took to calling him "Li Gong Zi," or Master Li.

When the poor were starving from years of unrelenting famine, the county government continued to send out bailiffs demanding from them payment of the land tax and repayment of arrears. Worried that the government's persistence in its tax collection effort could provoke civil unrest, Li Yan went to see the county magistrate named Song and tried to persuade him to announce a tax moratorium and to allocate part of the holdings in government granaries to aid the famine victims in the form of food loans.

县官对李岩说：“上司向地方派军饷，催得紧。我不向他们要税收租，拿什么交账。再说，官仓里的粮食早就空了，拿什么借给饥民。要借，只有请你们几家富户人家出粮了。”

李岩见县官不答应，回到家，打开自家的粮仓，把二百多石粮食拿出来让饥民分了。

闹饥荒的百姓见李公子肯捐粮，很高兴。但是受灾的百姓多，光李家捐粮也不顶事。有人想个主意，聚集几十个人到别的富户人家去请愿，要他们学李家的样儿。

那些富户人家不但不同意，反而向上门的饥民瞪白眼，说家里根本没粮。饥民一气之下，闹了起来，冲进一个富户的粮仓，把他家的粮食分了。

富户们发了慌，纷纷向县官哭诉。县官说：“这不是反了吗？”立刻派了几名差役拿着他的令牌前去制止，还扬言说，如果再聚众要挟，一定要重办。饥民们正在气头上，哪怕你县官硬压。他们揪住差役，把令牌扔在地上，砸得粉碎，还拥到县衙

The county magistrate said to Li Yan, "Higher authorities have been pressing local governments to fulfill their quotas for troop rations. How am I going to accomplish that without collecting taxes and debt repayments? Besides, the county granaries have long been depleted. There's nothing left to lend to the famine victims. Unless the wealthy families are willing to offer their grain holdings."

Rebuffed by the county magistrate, Li Yan went home and distributed the two hundred or so hectoliters of grain in his family granary to famine victims.

The famine victims were delighted by Master Li's generosity, but the Li family's grain alone was insufficient given the large number of the needy. Someone came up with the idea of sending a few dozen representatives to the other wealthy families to petition them to follow the example of the Li family.

The other wealthy families not only rejected their request but claimed, shooting dirty looks at the representatives, that they had no grain left. Frustrated, the hungry people became unruly and forced their way into the granary of a wealthy family and helped themselves to the stored grain.

The panicked wealthy households brought their complaint tearfully to the county magistrate, who said angrily, "This is a rebellious lot!" He immediately sent bailiffs with his official token of authority to stop the rioting and promised to mete out harsh punishment to anyone continuing to engage in mob violence. The hungry crowd in the heat of anger was unimpressed by official intimidation. They tackled the bailiffs and threw the county magistrate's official token of authority on the ground, shattering it to pieces; the crowd then moved in front of the

门前，嚷嚷说：“我们没有粮，早晚得饿死，不如跟你们拼了吧。”

县官一听饥民要暴动，吓得躲在县衙里不敢出来。他一想，还是李岩跟饥民有点来往，就赶快派人把李岩找来，请他想个办法。

李岩说：“你要不出乱子，只有赶快停止逼债，劝富户人家捐粮。”

县官没办法，只好勉强答应。聚集在县衙外的饥民听说李岩已经说服县官捐粮，才平息了气愤。有人说：“大伙先回去吧，要是过几天再不见他们拿出粮来，再找他们算账！”

哪料饥民一散，县令就翻悔了。他想，不向饥民逼税，虽然解了眼前的急，可上司催起来怎么办，自己的乌纱帽还保得住？他左思右想，就恨起李岩来，认为现在饥民闹得这样凶，全是那姓李的惹出来的。他立刻叫个办案的师爷写了一份公文给上司，诬告李岩收买民心，想要造反。

这消息泄漏了出来，人们都替李岩担心。附近林子里，有一支农民起义队伍，带头的青年女子，是江湖上卖艺的，人们叫她红娘子。红娘子平时听到李岩捐粮救灾的事，十分钦佩，现

county government building and shouted, "Without food, we will die anyway. We might as well die fighting you!"

The county magistrate cowered in his office, frightened by the hungry mob. He remembered Li Yan was on good terms with the famine victims, so he sent for him to discuss a way out of the impasse.

"If you want to avoid a riot," said Li Yan, "you must stop pressing for repayment of arrears and persuade the wealthy to donate relief grain."

The county magistrate, seeing no other alternative, gave his reluctant consent. The famine victims in front of the county building were only placated when they learned that Li Yan had persuaded the county magistrate to undertake food relief.

"Let's all go back now," some said. "If we don't see any grain in a few days, we will come back to settle accounts with them."

No sooner had the angry crowd dispersed than the magistrate regretted his decision. By announcing a tax moratorium, he thought, he might have averted a riot in the making; but what was he going to do when he was pressed to fulfill the county's quota for troop rations? Would he be able to keep his job then? The more he thought, the more he hated Li Yan. He blamed all this trouble stirred up by the famine victims on Li Yan. He immediately instructed his secretary to draft a memorandum to his superior, falsely accusing Li Yan of planning a rebellion by ingratiating himself with the populace.

When news about this memo got out, there was general concern for Li Yan. There was a band of peasant insurgents in a forest nearby, under the leadership of a young woman, who used to make a living by giving street performances. She was popularly

在听说李岩有遭害的危险，就到李岩家里，把李岩带到林子里躲避。

李岩开始并没弄清红娘子的本意，后来一听红娘子要把他留下，参加起义队伍，就不愿意。没多久，从红娘子那里偷偷地跑了回来。

李岩一回家，那如狼似虎的差役早就带着脚镣手铐等着他，一见李岩，就七手八脚把他铐了起来，带回县衙审问。

杞县的百姓听到李岩被捕，说：“李公子坐牢，咱们难道能眼睁睁看他受苦不去救他？”

红娘子听到消息，也带着队伍来了。一大群饥民跟着她，拿刀的拿刀，使棒的使棒，一起攻打县衙门。

县官和差役一看起义队伍人多势大，料想抵挡不住，都溜走了。红娘子和饥民一起，打开牢监，把李岩救了出来。

到了这步田地，李岩觉得回家也没有出路，才听从红娘子的劝告，跟起义的饥民一起投奔李闯王。

李自成弄清了李岩的情况，知道李岩虽然是富户人家出身的读书人，也是个受迫害的，再说，起义军正需要找个谋士，就把李岩留在营里。李岩早就知道李自成是个很有抱负的英雄，也就一心一意帮李自成推翻明王朝。

起义军队伍壮大以后，李自成着手整顿部队，严肃纪律，还

known as the "Red Lady." An admirer of Li Yan for his generosity in offering famine relief, the Red Lady went to Li Yan's home and took him into the forest under her protection after hearing about the danger he was in.

Li Yan was at first confused about the intention of the Red Lady, but when he realized she intended to make a rebel of him, he balked and soon sneaked back home. When Li Yan arrived home, the truculent bailiffs were waiting with handcuffs and leg irons, which they put on him the moment he walked in. He was taken to the county building for trial.

When the inhabitants of Qi County learned of Li Yan's arrest, they said to each other, "We cannot sit idly by while Master Li languishes in prison." The Red Lady also appeared with her troops. A large crowd of famine victims followed her with knives and sticks to advance on the county government.

The county magistrate and his bailiffs slipped away in the realization that they were hopelessly outnumbered by the attackers. The Red Lady and the famine victims stormed the jail and freed Li Yan. Under these circumstances Li Yan realized there was no future for him if he returned home, so he heeded the advice of the Red Lady and followed the insurgents to join Li Chuang Wang the Trailblazing King.

Li Zicheng understood that although Li Yan was a scholar born to a wealthy family, he was also a victim of persecution. Besides, he had been looking for an adviser. So he allowed Li Yan to stay. Li Yan, who had long heard that Li Zicheng was a man with a mission, decided to dedicate himself to helping Li Zicheng topple the Ming government.

As his insurgency gained in strength, Li Zicheng instituted

接受李岩的建议，提出“均田免赋”（“赋”就是税收）的口号。李岩派出一批起义兵士打扮成商人模样，混进官军占领的城里，逢人就宣传：“李闯王带的队伍是挺讲纪律的，不杀人也不抢东西。”人们对官军的杀人抢劫，早就恨透了。现在听说李闯王的队伍纪律严明，自然向着李闯王了。当地的农民还传唱着一些歌谣，也是李岩编的：

“吃他娘，穿他娘，开了大门迎闯王。闯王来时不纳粮。

朝求升，暮求合（一升的十分之一），近来贫汉难求活。早早开门拜闯王，管教大家都欢悦。”

李自成的起义军受到人民的支持，在杀死福王朱常洵之后，又在河南接连打了几个大胜仗。公元1643年，李自成攻破潼关，打死明朝督师、兵部尚书孙传庭，没多久就占领了西安。

troop reforms and tightened discipline. Following Li Yan's advice, he adopted the slogan of "Equitable distribution of farmland and tax moratorium." Insurgents disguised as traders were dispatched by Li Yan to towns occupied by government troops, where they would tell anyone who cared to listen: "Li Chuang Wang's troops are well-disciplined: they don't kill civilians and they don't loot." People were generally fed up with the killing and looting of the government troops and when they heard that Li Chuang Wang's troops were a disciplined lot, they naturally began to throw their support behind him. A ditty created by Li Yan circulated among the peasants:

"We look to Li Chuang Wang for food and clothing; we welcome him with open arms because under him we don't pay tax in the form of grain.

"Day and night the poor scrounge around for something to soothe their hunger. The sooner we swear fealty to Chuang Wang, the sooner the happy days will come."

Li Zicheng's insurgents enjoyed popular support. After killing Zhu Changxun, the Prince of Fu, they went on to win a string of major victories in Henan. In 1643, Tongguan fell to Li Zicheng. He killed the Ming supreme commander and Minister of War, Sun Chuanting. Shortly after, his troops took control of Xi'an.

20、吴三桂借清兵

公元1644年，李自成在西安正式建立了政权，国号大顺。接着，李自成率领一百万起义将士，渡过黄河，分两路进攻北京。两路大军势如破竹，到了这年三月，就在北京城下会师。城外驻守的明军最精锐的三大营全部投降。

起义军猛攻北京城。第二天晚上，崇祯帝登上煤山（在皇宫的后面，今北京景山）往四周一望，只见火光映天，知道形势危急，跑回宫里，拼命敲钟，想召集官员们来保护他。等了好久，连个人影儿都没有。这时候，他才知道末日到来，又回到煤山，在寿皇亭边一棵槐树下上吊自杀。统治中国二百七十七年的明王朝，宣告灭亡。

大顺起义军攻破北京，大将刘宗敏首先率领队伍进城，接着，大顺王李自成头戴笠帽，身穿青布衣，骑着骏马，缓缓地进了紫禁城。北京的百姓像过节一样，张灯结彩欢迎起义军。

20. Wu Sangui Borrows Qing Troops

In 1644, Li Zicheng formally established his regime in Xi'an with the dynasty name of Great Shun. Soon after that, Li Zicheng led a million insurgents across the Yellow River to attack Beijing along two routes. Li's forces made rapid progress and converged outside Beijing in March of that year. Three of the Ming's best regiments defending the periphery of the capital surrendered.

The insurgents subjected Beijing to a relentless assault. The following night when Emperor Chongzhen climbed the Meishan Hills behind the palace (present-day Jingshan Hills) and looked around, all he saw was a landscape of towering flames. He realized the direness of the situation and ran back to his palace to ring furiously at a bell in the hope of summoning help. He waited for a long time, but no official answered his call for help. Realizing his day of reckoning had come, he returned to the Meishan Hills and hanged himself on a scholar tree close to the Shouhuang Pavilion. The Ming Dynasty thus came to an end after ruling China for 277 years.

At the fall of Beijing, General Liu Zongmin was the first to enter the city at the head of his troops. He was followed by Li Zicheng, Emperor of the Great Shun, on his steed, wearing a straw hat and a black cloth tunic, making a leisurely entry into the Forbidden City. The inhabitants of Beijing gave the insurgents a festive welcome.

大顺政权一面出榜安民，叫大家安居乐业，一面严惩明王朝的皇亲国戚、贪官污吏。李自成派刘宗敏和李过，勒令那些权贵交出平时从百姓身上搜刮来的赃款，充当起义军的军饷，拒绝交付的处死刑。少数民愤大的皇亲国戚被起义军抓起来杀头。

有个大官僚吴襄，也被刘宗敏抄了家产，并且逮捕起来追赃。有人告诉李自成说，吴襄的儿子吴三桂是明朝的山海关总兵，手下还有几十万大军。如果把吴三桂招降了，岂不是解除了大顺政权一个威胁。

李自成觉得这个主意很有道理，就叫吴襄给他儿子写信，劝说他向起义军投降。

吴三桂原来是明朝派到关外抗清的，驻扎在宁远一带防守。起义军逼近北京的时候，崇祯帝接连下命令要吴三桂带兵进关，对付起义军。吴三桂赶到山海关，北京已被起义军攻破。过了几天，吴三桂收到吴襄的劝降信，倒犹豫起来。向起义军投降

The Great Shun government issued a public statement to reassure the citizens that they would now be able to resume normal life. The new government prosecuted without mercy members of the Ming royal house and corrupt officials. At instructions from Li Zicheng, Liu Zongmin and Li Guo demanded the elite surrender the spoils they had exacted from the people to fund the insurgent troops' rations. Those who refused were given stiff sentences. Some members of the royalty and aristocracy most hated by the public had to be executed.

Liu Zongmin confiscated the family assets of a high official named Wu Xiang and had him detained in order to recover his ill-gotten gains. Li Zicheng was told by someone that Wu Xiang's son, Wu Sangui, was the Ming's regional commander at Shanhai Pass, with hundreds of thousands of troops at his disposal. If Wu Sangui could be persuaded to submit, then the Shun Dynasty would be rid of a major threat.

Li Zicheng thought the idea made sense; he instructed Wu Xiang to write to his son to urge him to submit to the insurgents.

Wu Sangui had been dispatched by the Ming court to the north, outside Shanhai Pass, to block the advance of the Qing forces and was stationed in the Ningyuan area. When the insurgents pressed closer to Beijing, Emperor Chongzhen issued a succession of orders to Wu Sangui demanding that he lead his troops back into China proper to deal with the insurgents. By the time Wu Sangui reached Shanhai Pass, Beijing had fallen to the rebels. A few days later, when Wu Sangui received his father's letter urging him to surrender to the rebels, Wu Sangui couldn't make up his mind. He certainly was unwilling to surrender to the rebels. If he refused to surrender, however, he knew he was

吧，当然是他不愿意的，要不投降吧，起义军勇猛善战，兵力强大，自己不是他们的对手。再说，北京还有他的家属财产，也舍不得丢掉。既然李自成来招降，不如到北京去看看情况再说。

吴三桂带兵到了滦州，离北京越来越远，就遇到一些从北京逃出来的人。吴三桂找来一问，开始，听说他父亲吴襄被抓，家产被抄，已经恨得咬牙切齿；接着，又听说他最宠爱的歌姬陈圆圆也被起义军抓走，更是怒气冲天，立刻下令退回山海关，并且要将士们一律换上白盔白甲，说是要给死去的崇祯帝报仇。

李自成得知吴三桂拒绝投降，决定亲自带二十多万大军，进攻山海关。吴三桂本来就害怕农民军，听到这消息，吓得灵魂出窍。他也顾不了什么民族气节，写了一封信，派人飞马出关，请求清朝帮助他镇压起义军。

清朝辅政的亲王多尔衮接到吴三桂的求救信，觉得机会来到，立刻回信同意。接着，他亲自带着十几万清兵，日夜不停地向山海关进兵。

清军到了山海关下，吴三桂已经迫不及待地带着五百个亲

no match for the superior rebel force known for its valor and fighting abilities. He was also not yet ready to abandon his family and assets in Beijing. Since Li Zicheng had made him an offer, he might as well go back to Beijing to assess the situation there.

When Wu Sangui reached Luanzhou, on the approach to Beijing, he met people who had fled the Ming capital. After questioning them, he learned with irrepressible anger that his father Wu Xiang had been arrested and their family assets confiscated. When he learned that his favorite singer—companion Chen Yuanyuan had also been detained by the insurgents, his blood boiled. He immediately marched his troops back to Shanhai Pass, where he demanded that his troops change into white helmets and white suits of armor to signify his determination to avenge Emperor Chongzhen.

After learning that Wu Sangui had refused to surrender, Li Zicheng decided to personally lead a 200,000-strong force to attack Shanhai Pass. Wu Sangui, who had always had a fear of peasant troops, was scared out of his wits by the imminent attack. Throwing national pride out of the window, he dispatched a letter by fast horse to the Qing court, asking for help in putting down the insurgents.

When Prince Dorgon, who was regent of the Qing court, received Wu Sangui's call for assistance, he saw opportunity beckon and instantly replied affirmatively to the letter. No sooner said than done, he raced a hundred thousand Qing troops toward Shanhai Pass.

When Dorgon and the Qing army arrived outside Shanhai Pass, Wu Sangui was already waiting expectantly with his five hundred bodyguards. He resignedly entreated Dorgon to help him

兵出关迎接多尔衮。他见了多尔衮，卑躬屈膝地哀求多尔衮帮他报仇。多尔衮自然顺水推舟地答应。吴三桂把多尔衮请进关里，大摆酒宴，杀了白马乌牛，祭拜天地，订立了同盟。

李自成大军从南面开到山海关边。二十多万起义军，依山靠海，摆开浩浩荡荡的一字阵，一眼望不到边。老奸巨猾的多尔衮从城头望见起义军阵容坚强，料想不容易对付，就让吴三桂打先锋，叫清军埋伏起来，自己和几名清将远远躲在后面的山头观战。

战斗开始了，李自成骑着马登上西山指挥作战。吴三桂带兵一出城，起义军的左右两翼合围包抄，把吴三桂和他的队伍团团围住。明兵东窜西突，冲不出重围，起义军个个血战，喊杀声震天动地。

正在双方激烈战斗的时候，不料海边一阵狂风，把地面上的尘沙刮起，霎时，天昏地黑，对面见不到人。多尔衮看准时机，命令埋伏在阵后的几万清兵一起出动，向起义军突然袭击。起义军毫无防备，也弄不清是哪儿来的敌人，心里一慌张，阵势也就乱了。直到风定下来，天色转晴，才看清楚对手是留着辮子的清兵。

with his revenge. Dorgon was happy to oblige, as this course of action perfectly corresponded with his own plans. Wu Sangui invited Dorgon inside Shanhai Pass, lavishly wined and dined him, and swore a pact of alliance in a sacrificial rite complete with the butchering of a white horse and a black ox.

In the meantime, the army of Li Zicheng approached Shanhai Pass from the south. He arrayed his two hundred thousand troops in an impressive, single rank stretching from the hills to as far as the eye could see in the direction of the sea. The shrewd Dorgon, surveying the enemy formation from atop the battlements, knew they had before them a formidable foe. He let Wu Sangui have the honor of taking the leading position in the advance while his Qing troops lay in ambush. Dorgon and his generals observed the action from a hilltop a safe distance away.

As the battle commenced, Li Zicheng climbed the West Hills on his horse to direct operations. Soon after Wu Sangui sallied out of the gate, his troops were hemmed in from left and right by insurgents. The Ming troops dashed about, unable to find a way out of the encirclement. The insurgents fought a fearless battle, their war cries creating a deafening din.

As the battle raged, a strong gust blew from the sea, whipping up a sand storm that obscured the sky. In the sudden darkness, combatants were unable to make out the people around them. Taking advantage of the confusion, Dorgon ordered his tens of thousands of Qing troops that had lain low in the rear to launch a lightning attack against the insurgents, who were caught off guard and couldn't tell from which direction the enemy combatants were coming. They fell into disarray in a moment of panic and confusion. Only when the wind subsided and the dust settled did they realize

李自成在西山上发现清兵已经进关，想稳住阵脚，指挥抵抗，已经来不及了，只好传令后撤。多尔袞和吴三桂的队伍里外夹击，起义军遭到惨重失败。

李自成带领将士边战边退。吴三桂仗着清兵的势，在后面紧紧追赶。起义军回到北京，兵力已经大大削弱。

李自成回北京后，在皇宫大殿里举行即位典礼，接受官员的朝见。第二天一清早就率领起义军，离开北京，向西安撤退。

李自成离开北京的第三天，多尔袞带领清兵，耀武扬威地开进北京城。公元1644年十月，多尔袞把顺治帝从沈阳接到北京，把北京作为清朝国都。打那时候起，清王朝就开始在中国建立了它的统治。

that they had been attacked by Qing troops sporting pigtails.

On the West Hills, Li Zicheng came to the realization that Qing troops had been admitted inside Shanhai Pass. It was too late to regroup and fight back, so he ordered a retreat. Sandwiched between the attacking troops of Dorgon and Wu Sangui the insurgents suffered heavy casualties.

Li Zicheng retreated with his force, fighting to fend off the troops of Wu Sangui, who, emboldened by the presence of the Qing army, doggedly pursued the insurgents. The insurgents returned to Beijing a much weakened force.

Following Li Zicheng's return to Beijing, an enthronement ceremony was held in the great hall of the imperial palace, where he received the homage of the officialdom. First thing the following morning, he led his troops out of Beijing to move toward Xi'an.

The third day after Li Zicheng's departure from Beijing, Dorgon at the head of Qing troops entered Beijing triumphantly. In October 1644, Dorgon brought Emperor Shunzhi to Beijing from Shenyang and made Beijing the capital of the Qing Dynasty. Thus began the reign of the Qing Dynasty in China.

The following year, the Qing sent a force to attack Xi'an along

第二年，清朝分兵两路攻打西安。一路由阿济格和吴三桂、尚可喜率领，一路由多铎（音 duo）和孔有德率领。李自成率领农民军在潼关抗击清军，经过激烈战斗，终于被迫放弃西安，向襄阳转移。过了几个月，农民军在湖北通山县九宫山，遭到当地地主武装袭击，李自成战败牺牲。

李自成退出北京后，张献忠在四川称帝，国号大西，继续抗击清军。到公元1647年，清军进四川，张献忠在川北西充凤凰山的一场战斗中中箭死去。这样明朝末年的两支主要起义军都失败了。

two routes. One route was taken by Ajige, Wu Sangui and Shang Xexi and the other by Dodo and Kong Youde. Li Zicheng resisted the Qing attack at the head of his peasant army at Tongguan; after a fierce battle, he was forced to abandon Xi'an and retreat toward Xiangyang. A few months later, his peasant army was attacked by the local landowners' militia in the Jiugong Mountains in Tongshan County, Hubei. Li Zicheng was defeated and killed.

At the time of Li Zicheng's departure from Beijing, Zhang Xianzhong proclaimed himself emperor in Sichuan, with the dynasty name of Great Xi, and continued fighting the Qing. In 1647, the Qing sent troops into Sichuan. In a battle in the Fenghuang Mountains near Xichong in northern Sichuan, Zhang Xianzhong was killed by an arrow. Thus, both of the two major insurgencies in the later period of the Ming ended in failure.

21、史可法死守扬州

崇祯帝在煤山上吊自杀的消息传到明朝陪都南京，南京的大臣们一片慌乱。他们立了一个逃到南方的皇族、福王朱由崧做皇帝，在南京建立了一个政权，历史上把它叫做南明，把朱由崧称为弘光帝。

弘光帝朱由崧是个迷恋酒色、极端荒唐的人。凤阳总督马士英和一批魏忠贤的余党利用弘光帝昏庸，操纵了南明政权。弘光帝和马士英根本没想抵抗清兵，却过起荒淫作乐的生活来。

南明政权的兵部尚书史可法，本来不赞成让朱由崧做皇帝，为了避免引起内部冲突，才勉强同意。弘光帝即位以后，史可法主动要求到前方去统率军队。

那时候，长江北岸有四支明军，叫做四镇。四镇的将领都是骄横跋扈的人。他们割据地盘，互相争夺，放纵兵士残杀百

21. Shi Kefa's Valiant Defense of Yangzhou

When news of Emperor Chongzhen's suicide in Meishan Hills reached the Ming auxiliary capital of Nanjing, the high officials there were thrown into extreme consternation. They proceeded to install as emperor a certain Zhu Yousong, the Prince of Fu, a member of the imperial house who had fled south. This regime founded in Nanjing is known to history as the Southern Ming, and Zhu Yousong is known as Emperor Hongguang.

Emperor Hongguang was a grotesque character who had a hopeless weakness for alcohol and sex. The fatuity of Emperor Hongguang enabled Ma Shiyong, Governor of Fengyang, and holdovers from Wei Zhongxian's clique to usurp the power of the Southern Ming. Emperor Hongguang and Ma Shiyong never intended to fight the Qing army; they both wallowed in carnal pleasures.

Shi Kefa, the Minister of War of the Southern Ming, was against the idea of installing Zhu Yousong in the throne, but in the interest of internal harmony he gave his reluctant consent. After the accession of Emperor Hongguang, Shi Kefa volunteered for military duty on the frontline.

In that period there were four Ming armies north of the Yangtze, called the Four Garrisons. The commanders of these four garrisons were without exception arrogant and overbearing. They carved out their turfs, jockeyed for power and condoned

姓。史可法在南方将士中威信高，他到了扬州，那些将领不得不听他的号令。史可法亲自去找那些将领，劝他们不要自相残杀，接着，又把他们分配在扬州周围驻守，自己坐镇扬州指挥。大家就称呼他史督师。

史可法做了督师，以身作则，跟兵士同甘共苦，受到将士们的爱戴。这年大年夜，史可法把将士都打发去休息，独自留在官府里批阅公文。到了深夜，他感到精神疲劳，把值班的厨子叫了来，要点酒菜。

厨子回报说：“遵照您的命令，今天厨房里的肉都分给将士去过节，下酒的菜一点也没有了。”

史可法说：“那就拿点盐和酱下酒吧。”

厨子送上了酒，史可法就靠着几案喝起酒来。史可法的酒量本来很大，来到扬州督师后，就戒酒了。这一天，为了提提精神，才破例喝了点。一拿起酒杯，他想到国难临头，又想到朝廷这样腐败，心里愁闷，边喝酒边掉热泪，不知不觉多喝了几盅，带着几分醉意伏在几案上睡着了。

their troops' atrocities against the civilian population. Shi Kefa was a man of stature and high prestige among the military in the southern Ming. When he arrived in Yangzhou, the generals there deferred to his authority, whether they liked it or not. Shi Kefa personally went to see those generals to urge them to refrain from infighting. He then deployed them to the periphery of Yangzhou while he established his command inside Yangzhou. He was known as "Supreme Commander Shi."

As Supreme Commander, Shi Kefa won the respect and affection of his troops by his exemplary behavior and his common touch. On New Year's Eve that year, Shi Kefa gave orders for the troops to take a rest for the festive occasion and stayed in his office to read official communications and memos. Late at night, Shi Kefa felt tired of working and called the cook to ask him to prepare some food and wine.

"In accordance with your orders," the cook replied, "all the meat in the kitchen was distributed to the troops for the festive occasion. There's nothing left to go with your wine."

"Then bring me some salt and sauce to go with my wine," said Shi Kefa.

The cook brought his wine and Shi Kefa began drinking at his desk. He was a man with a large capacity for alcohol, but he had quit drinking after taking up his post in Yangzhou. That evening, however, he needed an alcoholic boost to stay awake. As his thoughts turned to the difficulties the country was going through and the rampant government corruption and incompetence, he was filled with frustration and worry. Tears streamed down his face as he refilled his cup without realizing it; soon he had drunk too much and fell asleep on his desk, intoxicated.

第二天一清早，扬州文武官员按照惯例到督师衙门议事，只见大门还紧紧地关着。大家不禁奇怪，因为督师平常都是起得极早的。后来，有个兵士出来，告诉大家说：“督师昨晚喝了酒，还没醒来。”

扬州知府任民育说：“督师平日操劳过度，昨夜睡得这么好，真是难得的事。大家别去惊动他，让他再好好休息一会吧。”他还把打更的人找来，要他重复打四更的鼓（打四更鼓，表示天还没亮）。

史可法一觉醒来，天已经大亮，侧耳一听，打更人还在打四更，不禁勃然大怒，把兵士叫了进来说：“是谁在那里乱打更鼓，违反我的军令。”兵士把任民育吩咐的话说了，史可法才没话说，赶快接见官员，处理公事。

打那天起，史可法下决心不再喝酒了。

没多久，清军在多铎带领下，大举南下。史可法指挥四镇将领抵抗，打了一些胜仗。可是南明政权内部却起了内讧。驻守武昌的明军将领左良玉为了跟马士英争权，起兵进攻南京。马

The next morning, when the civil and military officials of Yangzhou came as usual to the Supreme Commander's office to transact official business, they found the door still tightly shut. This was highly unusual because the Supreme Commander was normally an early riser. After a while a soldier came out to announce: "The Supreme Commander had a few drinks last night and has not yet woken up."

Ren Minyu, Governor of Yangzhou, said, "The Supreme Commander is overworked. It is not often that he gets such rest. Let's not disturb his sleep. He needs it." He called in the night watchman and instructed him to keep signaling on his drum the one to two a.m. hours in order to make Shi Kefa believe it was still night.

When Shi Kefa woke up to find it was late morning and yet the night watchman was still beating the one to two a.m. hours on his drum, he flew into a rage.

He summoned a soldier and demanded, "Who is marking the wrong hours on his nightwatch drum in violation of my orders?"

The soldier explained the instructions given by Ren Yumin. Shi Kefa calmed down and summoned the officials to begin the day's business.

From that day on Shi Kefa decided never to drink another drop.

When Dodo marched a massive Qing army against the Southern Ming, Shi Kefa led the commanders of the Four Garrisons in resisting the Qing advance, with some success. But the Southern Ming government was racked by internal strife: General Zuo Liangyu, garrisoned in Wuchang, began marching his troops on Nanjing in a contest of power with Ma Shiyong. Frightened to death,

士英害怕得要命，急忙将江北四镇军队撤回，对付左良玉，还用弘光帝名义要史可法带兵回南京保护他。

史可法明知道清军压境，不该离开。但是为了平息内争，不得不带兵回南京。刚过长江，知道左良玉已经兵败，他急忙回江北，清兵已经逼近扬州。

史可法发出紧急檄文，要各镇将领集中到扬州守卫。但是过了几天，竟没有一个发兵来救。史可法知道，只有依靠扬州军民，孤军奋战了。

清军到了扬州城下，多铎先派人到城里向史可法劝降，一连派了五个人，都被史可法拒绝。多铎恼羞成怒，下令把扬州城紧紧包围起来。

扬州城危急万分，城里一些胆小的将领害怕了。第二天，就有一个总兵和一个监军背着史可法，带着本部人马，出城向清军投降。这一来，城里的守卫力量就更薄弱了。

史可法把全城官员召集起来，勉励他们同心协力，抵抗清兵，并且分派了守城的任务。他分析一下形势，认为西门是最

Ma Shiyong immediately ordered the troops of the Four Garrisons north of the Yangtze to come back to the capital to confront Zuo Liangyu. He also ordered, in the name of Emperor Hongguang, Shi Kefa to return to Nanjing with his troops to protect him.

Shi Kefa knew he should not leave Yangzhou when the Qing army was threatening to attack. But in the interest of easing the internal tensions in the Ming court, he had no alternative but to return to Nanjing with his troops. When he crossed the Yangtze, he learned that Zuo Liangyu had been defeated; by the time he doubled back, the Qing army was already within striking distance of Yangzhou.

Shi Kefa issued an urgent appeal for the commanders of the garrisons to converge on Yangzhou to help with its defense. But days passed with no response. Shi Kefa realized that he had to fight the battle without counting on external help, relying only on the military and civilians inside Yangzhou.

When the Qing army arrived at the foot of the city walls, Dodo sent an emissary to Yangzhou to urge Shi Kefa to surrender. He sent four emissaries in succession and each was rebuffed by Shi Kefa. In a rage, Dodo ordered a siege.

Yangzhou was in dire danger and some commanders with less than steady nerves were frightened. The next day a regional commander and an Army Supervisor went out of the city with their respective troops and surrendered to the Qing army, without Shi Kefa's knowledge. The city defenses were further weakened as a result.

Shi Kefa assembled all the officials and leaders of the city and called on them to unite against the Qing attackers. He assigned them to various tasks. According to his assessment, the

重要的防线，就亲自带兵防守西门。将士们见史可法坚定沉着，都很感动，表示一定要和督师一起，誓死抵抗。

多铎命令清兵没日没夜地轮番攻城。扬州军民奋勇作战，把清兵的进攻一次次打回去。清兵死了一批，又来了一批，形势越来越危急了。

多铎下了狠心，开始用大炮攻城。他探听到西门防守最严，又是史可法亲自防守，就下令炮手专向西北角轰击。炮弹一颗颗在西门口落下来，城墙渐渐塌下，终于被轰开了缺口。

史可法正在指挥军民堵缺口，大批清军已经蜂拥着冲进城来。史可法眼看城已经没法再守，拔出佩刀往自己脖子上抹。随从的将领们抢上前去抱住史可法，把他手里的刀夺了下来。史可法还不愿走，部将们连拉带劝地把他保护出小东门。这时候，有一批清兵过来，看见史可法穿的明朝官员的装束，就吆喝着问他是谁。

史可法怕伤害别人，就高声说：“我就是史督师，你们快杀我吧！”

公元1645年四月，扬州城陷落，史可法被害。

多铎因为攻城的清军遭到很大伤亡，心里恼恨，竟灭绝人

west gate was the most vital link in the line of defense, so he assumed personal command there. The troops were inspired by the calm determination of Shi Kefa and vowed to fight to their last breaths by the Supreme Commander's side.

Dodo mounted a continuous assault on the city by rotating his troops. As the valiant people and troops defending Yangzhou thwarted one wave of attack, another wave of Qing soldiers would take the place of the dead comrades before them. The situation was becoming more and more precarious for the defenders of the city.

Dodo soon escalated the attack by using cannons. His intelligence told him that the west gate was the most heavily defended spot and was under Shi Kefa's personal command. He ordered his gunners to shell the northwest corner of the city. Under the steady bombardment, the wall section near the west gate crumbled and a gap appeared.

As Shi Kefa was directing the inhabitants and troops to repair the breach, large numbers of Qing troops swarmed into the city. Realizing the city could no longer be defended, Shi Kefa pulled out his sword and swung it toward his neck, but he was quickly tackled by nearby commanders who wrested his sword from him. Shi Kefa refused to leave Yangzhou but his subalterns coaxed and dragged him to safety through the east gate. They ran into a group of Qing soldiers who, seeing Shi Kefa in an official gown of the Ming court, yelled at him to reveal his identity.

Shi Kefa, not wishing to implicate others, shouted: "I am Supreme Commander Shi. I'm ready to die!"

In April 1645 Yangzhou fell to the Qing and Shi Kefa was killed. Dodo, angered by the heavy casualties suffered by the Qing

性地下令屠杀扬州百姓。大屠杀延续了十天才结束。历史上把这件惨案称作“扬州十日”。

大屠杀之后，史可法的养子史德威进城寻找史可法的遗体。因为尸体太多，天热又都腐烂了，怎么也认不出来，只好把史可法生前穿过的袍子和用过的箭板，埋葬在扬州城外的梅花岭上。这就是到现在还保存的史可法“衣冠墓”。

扬州失守后几天，清军攻破南京。南明政权的官员投降的

投降，逃寇的逃寇，弘光政权被清灭了。

清兵继续南下，还颁布一道剃发令，强迫百姓在十天之内，改依清人的习惯，一律剃掉前半部头发，留下一条辮子，违抗命令的处死，实行“留头不留发，留发不留头”，这样一来，更加激起了江南百姓的反抗情绪。江阴军民在典史（县衙里一种小官）阎应元率领下，顶住二十多万清兵的重重包围，坚守了八十多天，城里男女老少，没有一个投降，清军死伤惨重，嘉定军民坚持抗清斗争三个月，被清军屠城三次，牺牲两万多人，历史上把这次惨案称作“嘉定三屠”。

army in the assault on the city, committed a crime against humanity by ordering the massacre of Yangzhou's inhabitants. The atrocity went on for ten days and is known to history as the "Ten Days in Yangzhou."

In the wake of the massacre, Shi Kefa's adoptive son Shi Dewei went into the city to look for the remains of Shi Kefa. But there were simply too many dead bodies; all decomposed beyond recognition in the hot weather. He had to content himself with burying an official gown and a tablet (held during imperial audiences) used by Shi Kefa in a tomb in Mount Meihualing outside Yangzhou. This tomb containing only articles of clothing belonging to Shi Kefa has been preserved to this day.

Several days after the fall of Yangzhou, the Qing army captured Nanjing. Officials of the Southern Ming either surrendered or fled and the regime of Emperor Hongguang was toppled.

The Qing continued its southward advance. It issued an order that gave the Chinese people ten days to adopt the Qing (Manchu) custom of shaving the front half of their head leaving a pigtail at the back. Violators would be executed: "if you want to keep your head, lose your hair; if you want to keep your hair, lose your head." This further antagonized the people south of the Yangtze. Under the leadership of Yan Yingyuan, a minor official of Jiangyin, its inhabitants and troops held the town against two hundred thousand Qing troops for more than eighty days. Not one of its inhabitants surrendered and the Qing troops suffered heavy casualties in the battle. In Jiading, its people and military fought the Qing troops for three months and suffered three massacres costing twenty thousand lives. This atrocity is known to history as the "Three Massacres of Jiading."

22、郑成功收复台湾

隆武帝在福州建立政权之后，他手下大臣黄道周是个真心抗清的人，一心想帮助隆武帝出师北伐。但是掌握兵权的郑芝龙，只想保存自己的实力，不愿出兵。过了一年，清军进军福建的时候，派人向他劝降。郑芝龙贪图富贵，就抛弃了隆武帝，向清朝投降，隆武政权也灭亡了。

郑芝龙有个儿子叫郑成功，当时是个才二十二岁的青年将领。郑芝龙投降清朝的时候，郑成功苦苦劝阻他父亲。后来，他眼见父亲执迷不悟，气愤之下，就单独跑到南澳岛，招募了几千人马，坚决抗清。清王朝知道郑成功是个能干的将才，几次三番派人诱降，都被郑成功拒绝。清将又派他弟弟带了郑芝龙的信劝他投降。他弟弟说：“你如果再不投降，只怕父亲的性命难保。”

郑成功坚决不动摇，写了一封回信，跟郑芝龙决绝。

22. Zheng Chenggong Recovers Taiwan

After Emperor Longwu established a regime in Fuzhou, Huang Daozhou, a committed anti-Qing minister of his, was eager to help Emperor Longwu to launch a northern expedition against the Qing. But Zheng Zhilong, who controlled the military, was more concerned about preserving his military strength than risking it in a military operation. A year later, when the Qing marched on Fuzhou and sent an emissary to persuade him to surrender, Zheng Zhilong could not resist the temptation of wealth and power and surrendered to the Qing, abandoning Emperor Longwu. That spelled the end of the Longwu regime.

Zheng Zhilong's son, Zheng Chenggong, was a young general of 22. Zheng Chenggong had tried to talk his father out of surrendering to the Qing. When he realized his father was not amenable to reason and persisted in his defection, he left home in annoyance and went to Nan'ao Island, where he recruited several thousand men to continue fighting the Qing. The Qing saw an outstanding general in Zheng Chenggong and tried several times to co-opt him but were rebuffed each time. The Qing army dispatched Zheng Chenggong's younger brother carrying a letter from their father, Zheng Zhilong, urging him to submit to the Qing.

"If you continue to refuse to surrender," warned his brother, "our father's life will be in danger."

郑成功兵力渐渐强大起来，在厦门建立了一支水师。他跟抗清将领张煌言联合起来，乘海船率领水军十七万人开进长江，分水陆两路进攻南京，一直打到南京城下。但是清军用假投降的手段欺骗他。郑成功中了清军的计，最后打了败仗，又退回厦门。

郑成功回到厦门，清军已经占领福建大部分地方，他们用封锁的办法，要福建、广东沿海百姓后撤四十里，断绝对郑军的供应，想困死郑成功。郑成功在那里招兵筹饷，都遇到困难，就决定向台湾发展。

台湾自古以来就是我国的领土。明朝末年，欧洲的荷兰人趁明王朝腐败无能，霸占了台湾的海岸，修建城堡，向台湾人民勒索苛捐杂税。台湾人民不断反抗，遭到了荷兰侵略军的镇压。

郑成功少年时期就跟随他父亲到过台湾，亲眼看到台湾人民遭受的苦难，早就想收复台湾。这一回，他下决心赶走侵略军，就下命令要他的将士修造船只，收集粮草，准备渡海。

恰好在这时候，有一个在荷兰军队里当过翻译的何廷斌，赶到厦门见郑成功，劝郑成功收复台湾。他说，台湾人民受侵略

Zheng Chenggong remained unswayed and disowned his father Zheng Zhilong in a written reply.

Zheng Chenggong's force grew and he built a navy in Xiamen. In alliance with the anti-Qing general Zhang Huangyan, he sailed a sea-going fleet of ships with 170,000 troops into the Yangtze in an attack on Nanjing by land and water. His fleet fought its way into Nanjing, but he was fooled by a fake surrender by the Qing army. He returned to Xiamen, defeated.

By the time of Zheng Chenggong's return to Xiamen, the Qing had taken control of most of Fujian. The Qing army imposed a blockade against Zheng by ordering all settlements along the coast of Fujian and Guangdong moved inland by forty *li* to deny Zheng Chenggong logistical support. With his source of manpower and funds drying up, he decided to move his operations to Taiwan.

Taiwan had been Chinese territory since time immemorial. However, having taken advantage of the corruption and incompetence of the Ming in its later years, the Dutch now occupied coastal areas of Taiwan and had built fortifications. The people of Taiwan rebelled against the harsh levies imposed by the Dutch, but their frequent uprisings were put down by the Dutch invaders.

Zheng Chenggong had visited Taiwan with his father when he was an adolescent. Witnessing the harsh life of the Taiwan inhabitants under alien rule, he became obsessed with the idea of recovering Taiwan from foreign occupation. Now more than ever determined to expel the invaders, he commissioned the building of ships and stored up rations in preparation for a crossing.

A man named He Tingbin, who had been an interpreter for the Dutch troops, came at this time to Xiamen to see Zheng

军欺侮压迫，早就想反抗了。只要大军一到，一定能够把敌人赶走。何廷斌还送给郑成功一张台湾地图，把荷兰侵略军的军事布置都告诉了郑成功。郑成功有了这个可靠的情报，进攻台湾的信心就更足了。

公元1661年三月，郑成功要他儿子郑经带领一部分军队留守厦门，自己亲率二万五千名将士，分乘几百艘战船，浩浩荡荡从金门出发。他们冒着风浪，越过台湾海峡，在澎湖休整几天，准备直取台湾。这时候，有些将士听说西洋人的大炮厉害，有点害怕。郑成功把自己乘坐的战船排在前面，鼓励将士说：“荷兰人的红毛火炮没什么可怕，你们只要跟着我的船前进就是。”

荷兰侵略军听说郑军要进攻台湾，十分惊慌。他们把军队集中在台湾（在今台湾东平地区）和赤嵌（在今台南地区）两座城堡，还在港口沉了好多破船，想阻挡郑成功的船队登岸。

郑成功叫何廷斌领航，利用海水涨潮的时机，驶进了鹿耳门，登上台湾岛。

Chenggong and urged him to recover Taiwan from the Dutch. He said that the people of Taiwan, suffering under the Dutch invaders, had long considered a revolt. With the arrival of Zheng's troops, they were sure to run the enemy off Taiwan. He Tingbin gave Zheng a map of Taiwan showing the details of the military deployment of the Dutch invaders. With this reliable information in hand, Zheng Chenggong felt greater confidence in his planned attack on Taiwan.

In March 1661, leaving his son Zheng Jing in charge of the defense of Xiamen with some troops, Zheng Chenggong and his fleet of hundreds of battle ships carrying twenty-five thousand troops set out from Jinmen (Quemoy). They braved the waves of the Taiwan Strait and arrived at the Penghu Islands (Portuguese name: the Pescadores), where they paused for a few days rest, preparing for the voyage to Taiwan. Some officers and troops were apprehensive about the cannons of the Europeans, which, they had heard, were lethal. Zheng Chenggong moved his own flagship to the front of the fleet in an attempt to boost troop morale.

"There's nothing to fear from the cannons of the redheaded Dutch," he declared. "Just follow my ship!"

The Dutch invaders were rattled by the news of Zheng Chenggong's attack on Taiwan. They concentrated their troops in the fortresses in Tayoan City (Dutch name: Fort Zeelandia, in present-day *Dongping*) and Chikan (Dutch name: Fort Providentia, in today's Tainan) and sank a number of old ships in the harbors to prevent Zheng's ships from berthing.

With He Tingbin as guide, Zheng Chenggong's fleet successfully took advantage of high tide to enter Luermen and land their troops on the Taiwan shore.

台湾人民听到郑军来到，成群结队推着小车，提水端茶，迎接亲人。躲在城堡里的荷兰侵略军头目气急败坏地派了一百多个兵士冲来，郑成功一声号令，把敌军紧紧围住，杀了一个敌将，敌兵也溃散了。

侵略军又调动一艘最大的军舰“赫克托”号，张牙舞爪地开了过来，阻止郑军的船只继续登岸。郑成功沉着镇定，指挥他的六十艘战船把“赫克托”号围住。郑军的战船小，行动灵活。郑成功号令一下，六十多只战船一齐发炮，把“赫克托”号打中起了火。大火熊熊燃烧，把海面照得通红。“赫克托”号渐渐沉没下去，还有三艘荷兰船一看形势不妙，吓得掉头就逃。

荷兰侵略军遭到惨败，龟缩在两座城里不敢应战。他们一面偷偷派人到巴达维亚（今爪哇）去搬救兵，一面派使者到郑军大营求和，说只要郑军肯退出台湾，他们宁愿献上十万两白银慰劳。

郑成功扬起眉毛，威严地说：“台湾本来是我国的领土，我们收回这地方，是理所当然的事。你们如果赖着不走，就把你们赶出去！”

Large crowds of Taiwan inhabitants welcomed the Zheng troops by bringing water and tea to them. When the flustered Dutch troop leader ensconced in the fort sent a hundred soldiers against them, Zheng Chenggong ordered his troops to surround the Dutch soldiers. One Dutch officer was killed and the rest dispersed in defeat.

The Dutch invaders called in their largest battleship. The colossus bore down on the Zheng fleet in an attempt to stop him from landing more troops. Without losing his cool, Zheng maneuvered his sixty battleships into a circle around the Dutch ship. Zheng's ships were smaller but also nimbler; when Zheng gave the order, the sixty ships fired their cannons at the Dutch ship, setting it alight. The flames turned the sea surface bright red. As the Dutch ship began to sink, three other Dutch ships became alarmed and they turned tail and steamed away.

Soundly beaten in the encounter, the Dutch invaders battered down in the two fortresses, not daring to venture out to engage the Zheng force. While quietly sending an emissary to Batavia (modern Java) for help, they dispatched an envoy to the Zheng headquarters to appeal for peace. They offered a hundred thousand taels of silver in return for the Zheng army's pulling out of Taiwan.

Zheng Chenggong, his eyebrows raised in indignation, replied, "Taiwan has always been Chinese territory. It is within our right to recover this land. If you insist on staying here, we will drive you out by force!"

After rebuffing the Dutch peace overture, Zheng Chenggong launched a strong offensive against Chikan (Fort Providential). The Dutch force at the fort put up a stiff resistance and Zheng's

郑成功喝退荷兰使者，派兵猛攻赤嵌。赤嵌的敌军还想顽抗，一时攻不下来。有个当地人给郑军出个主意说，赤嵌城的水都是从城外高地流下来的，只要切断水源，敌人就不战自乱。郑成功照这个办法做了，不出三天，赤嵌的荷兰人果然乖乖地投降。

盘踞台湾城的侵略军企图顽抗，等待救兵。郑成功决定采取长期围困的办法逼他们投降。在围困八个月之后，郑成功下令向台湾城发起强攻。荷兰侵略军走投无路，只好扯起白旗投降。公元1662年初，侵略军头目被迫到郑成功大营，在投降书上签了字后，灰溜溜地离开了台湾。

郑成功从荷兰侵略者手里收复了我国神圣领土台湾，成为我国历史上杰出的民族英雄。

attack stalled. A local man gave vital information to Zheng's army: Chikan received its freshwater from the hills outside the city; if the water was cut off, the Dutch defense would crumble without a fight. Zheng took the advice and within three days the Dutch at Chikan surrendered.

The Dutch invaders occupying Tayoan City (Fort Zeelandia) kept up their resistance while waiting for reinforcements. Zheng decided to force them to surrender by a long siege. After eight months of siege, Zheng launched an all-out assault on the fort. The Dutch defenders, sensing they had run out of options, hoisted the white flag. In early 1662, the leader of the Dutch invaders went to Zheng Chenggong's headquarters to sign the Dutch surrender that ended the Dutch presence on Taiwan.

Zheng Chenggong's recovery of Taiwan, an integral part of Chinese territory, from the Dutch invaders has earned him a place in Chinese history as a great patriot.

23、李定国转战西南

隆武、鲁王两个南明政权先后覆灭之后，清军分三路向西南进攻，驻守在两广的明朝官员瞿式耜（音 sì）等在肇庆拥立桂王朱由榔即位，年号永历，历史上称他永历帝。

公元1647年十一月，明朝将领何腾蛟，依靠大顺军余部的力量，在全州大败清军，瞿式耜在桂林，也打退了清军的进攻，南明军声势大振。但是，由于桂王政权内部的不团结，湖广和广西又被清军占领。过了两年，何腾蛟在湘潭被俘杀害，瞿式耜也在桂林城被清兵攻陷后就义。在桂王政权面临覆灭的时刻，李定国领导的大西农民军，担负起抗清的重任，在西南一带又继续战斗了十多年。

李定国是张献忠手下四名勇将之一，又是他的义子，最大的是孙可望，李定国是老二。张献忠牺牲以后，留下五六万起义军由孙可望、李定国率领，南下贵州、云南。他们派人向永

23. Li Dingguo Campaigns in Southwest China

After the fall of the Southern Ming regimes of Longwu and the Prince of Lu, the Qing sent its army along three routes into southwest China. Qu Shisi, a Ming official in Liangguang, alongside other Ming officials, hailed Zhu Youlang (Prince of Gui) as emperor in Zhaoqing with the reign name of Yongli. He is known to history as Emperor Yongli.

In November 1647, remnant troops of the Great Shun under the command of the Ming general He Tengjiao won a major victory in Quanzhou against the Qing army. Qu Shisi also repelled a Qing attack in Guilin. The Southern Ming military was riding high; but soon Huguang and Guangxi were retaken by the Qing as a result of internal disunity in the regime of the Prince of Gui. Two years later He Tengjiao was captured and killed in Xiangtan and Qu Shisi was also killed after Guilin fell to the Qing army. As the regime of the Prince of Gui teetered on the brink of collapse, the Daxi (Great West) peasant army led by Li Dingguo became a major player in the anti-Qing cause. It operated in the southwest for over a decade.

Li Dingguo was one of the four top commanders under Zhang Xianzhong. Both he and Sun Kewang, his senior, were Zhang's adoptive sons. After the death of Zhang, Sun and Li led the fifty to sixty thousand insurgents into Guizhou and Yunnan in the southwest. They proposed to Emperor Yongli that they form an alliance against the Qing. After several flip-flops, Emperor Yongli

历帝建议，愿意和他们联合抗清。经过一番周折，永历帝看到形势危急，只好依靠大西军，封孙可望为秦王。

孙可望是个野心家，他把永历帝控制在手里，在贵阳作威作福，独断专横，不把抗清放在心里，李定国却一心抗清，他在云南花了一年时间，训练了三万精兵，加紧制造武器盔甲，他还找了一批驯象的人，组成一支象队。在做好准备之后，决定出兵进攻清军。

李定国领导的军队士气高涨，军纪严明。他们从云南、贵州一直打到湖南，连战连胜，收复了几座重镇，接着，又三路进攻桂林。驻守桂林的清军主帅孔有德几次派兵迎战，没有交战兵士就逃散了。孔有德不得不亲自带兵到严关，和明军对垒。李定国大军一到，前面是高大的象队，后面是雄赳赳的兵士。大象一上阵吼叫起来，清军的战马听到象吼，就吓得到处乱窜。那时，天忽然下起大雨，电闪雷鸣，象群趁势一冲，清兵大败，明军奋勇追击，杀得清军一败涂地。

孔有德急忙把兵士撤进桂林城，把城门关上。李定国把桂林城紧紧包围，日夜猛攻。孔有德亲自登城防守，明军的乱箭

was finally forced by the critical situation he found himself in to enlist the help of the Daxi army and pronounced Sun Kewang Prince of Qin.

An ambitious man, Sun Kewang soon had Emperor Yongli under his thumb and became a local tyrant in Guiyang. The anti-Qing cause was far from his thoughts. Li Dingguo, on the other hand, remained committed to the fight against the Qing. In a year he had raised thirty thousand well-trained troops and actively pushed for the manufacture of weapons and armor. He hired elephant trainers to form an elephant brigade. When the conditions ripened, he marched his troops against the Qing army.

Li had a well-disciplined army with a high morale. His force battled its way from Yunnan and Guizhou to Hunan, winning an unbroken string of victories and recapturing a number of strategic towns. It then marched on Guilin along three routes. Kong Youde, the Qing commander defending Guilin sent his troops out to engage the enemy several times but each time his troops fled before battle was joined. Kong Youde decided to personally lead a force to Yanguan to confront the Ming troops. Li Dingguo's impressive army was preceded by the brigade of tall elephants, whose trumpets startled the battle horses of the Qing army and sent them running in all directions. As a heavy rain fell amid thunderclaps and flashes of lightning, the elephants charged ahead and the Qing troops were defeated. Many were killed by the pursuing Ming army.

Kong Youde beat a hasty retreat with his troops into the city of Guilin and closed the city gate. Li Dingguo surrounded the city with his troops and mounted round-the-clock assaults. When Kong Youde climbed the battlements to direct operations, he was hit by an arrow on the forehead. Following this near-fatal injury,

射去，正中孔有德的前额。这时候，他又得到城北山头已被李定国攻占的消息，就放起一把火，投到火里自杀了。

李定国攻进桂林，一面分兵继续肃清残敌，一面安定百姓，把逃到山里的南明官员接回城里。有一天，李定国在七星岩边摆了酒宴宴请官员，他跟官员们说：“现在的局势，就像南宋末年一样。你们不是敬佩文天祥、陆秀夫、张世杰诸公吗？他们的精忠浩气，固然是名留青史，但是我们尽忠国家，毕竟不希望有这样的结局啊。”

大家听了，都深深佩服李定国的豪迈气概。

永历帝得到捷报，封李定国为西宁王。接着李定国又带兵打下永州、衡阳、长沙，逼近岳州。清朝廷大为震惊，连忙派亲王尼堪带兵十万反攻长沙。李定国得到消息，知道敌人来势很猛，就主动从长沙撤出，却在退到衡阳的路上设下伏兵。尼堪亲自率兵追击，中了明军的埋伏，尼堪当场被砍死了。

李定国的胜利，引起秦王孙可望的妒忌，孙可望假意邀请李定国商量国事，想陷害李定国，李定国发现他的诡计，只好带兵离开湖南，回到云南。孙可望想提高自己的威望，亲自到湖南进攻清军，却打了个大败仗。

he was told that the high ground north of the city had been taken by Li's troops. Distraught, he started a fire and threw himself into the flames.

Li Dingguo entered Guilin with his troops. As a clean-up operation went on, he appealed for public calm and invited back the Southern Ming officials who had fled into the hills.

At a banquet thrown by Li Dingguo at Qixingyan for the officials, he told them, "Our situation is akin to that prevailing in the waning years of the Southern Song. You are admirers of Wen Tianxiang, Lu Xiufu and Zhang Shijie. They have earned a place in history as great patriots. We are patriots too but, we don't want our country to go the way of the Song in its last gasps."

The officials were deeply impressed by Li's vision and perspective.

When Emperor Yongli received news of the victory, he declared Li Dingguo Prince of Xining. Li went on to take Yangzhou, Hengyang and Changsha. As his army approached Yuezhou, the Qing court was greatly alarmed and immediately sent Prince Nikan with a hundred thousand troops to retake Changsha. Not wanting to directly confront a strong enemy, Li pulled out of Changsha by choice but laid an ambush along the way to Hengyang. Nikan led his troops in pursuit and walked into the trap. He was hacked to death in the battle.

Li's victories aroused the jealousy of Sun Kewang, the Prince of Qin. Sun invited Li Dingguo to meet with him on the pretext of discussing affairs of state, with the intention of eliminating Li. Discovering Sun's intentions, Li Dingguo left Hunan with his troops and returned to Yunnan. In a bid to raise his own stature and prestige, Sun Kewang led a force into Hunan to attack the Qing army but suffered a major defeat.

孙可望野心勃勃，想逼迫永历帝让位。他知道要达到这个目的，一定要除掉李定国，就亲自带兵十四万进攻云南。哪里想到，他手下的将士们恨透了他的分裂活动，在双方交战的时候，纷纷倒戈奔向李定国一边，孙军全部瓦解。孙可望狼狈逃回贵阳，又遭到留守贵阳的将士的反对。孙可望走投无路，就逃到长沙向清军投降。

南明政权经过孙可望叛乱，力量已经削弱。公元1658年，清兵由降将吴三桂、洪承畴等率领，分三路进攻云南、贵州。李定国分三路阻击，都遭到失败，不得不退回昆明。永历帝和他的几个亲信官员惊慌失措，逃往缅甸。

永历帝逃往缅甸后，李定国继续在云南边境上收集人马，打击清军，准备恢复。他接连十三次派人去接永历帝回国，永历帝却不敢回来。公元1661年十二月，吴三桂带领十万清兵开进缅甸，逼迫缅甸交出永历帝，带回昆明。一到昆明，永历帝被吴三桂勒死，最后一个南明政权到这时候彻底灭亡。

李定国艰苦抗清十多年，没有实现他的愿望，他心情忧愤，终于得病死去。临死的时候，他对儿子和部将说：“宁可死在荒野，可不能投降啊！”

The ambitious Sun Kewang attempted to force Emperor Yongli to cede the throne to him. Knowing he must eliminate Li Dingguo in order to accomplish this, he led a 140,000-strong force into Yunnan to attack Li. But his troops were disgusted by his divisive tactics; when battle began, they switched their loyalty to Li Dingguo and Sun's army suffered a debacle. When Sun Kewang fled back to Guiyang, the troops of Guiyang wanted nothing to do with him. With nowhere to turn, he fled to Changsha, where he surrendered to the Qing army.

The Southern Ming was much weakened as a result of the betrayal by Sun Kewang. In 1658, a Qing army led by the defector Ming generals Wu Sangui and Hong Chengchou attacked Yunnan and Guizhou along three routes. Li Dingguo tried to check their advance on three fronts but failed and was compelled to return to Kunming. The panicked Emperor Yongli accompanied by some trusted aides fled to Myanmar.

After Emperor Yongli's flight, Li Dingguo continued to recruit anti-Qing troops along the Yunnan border in preparation for recovery of lost territory. He sent thirteen missions to Myanmar to urge Emperor Yongli's return but the emperor did not have the nerve to come back.

In December 1661, Wu Sangui entered Myanmar with a hundred thousand Qing troops and forced Myanmar to surrender Emperor Yongli, whom he took back to Kunming and strangled to death. The last Southern Ming regime thus perished.

Unable to accomplish his goal after more than ten years of hard struggle against the Qing, Li Dingguo, stressed and frustrated, fell ill and died. On his deathbed, he said to his offspring and subalterns: "Better die in the wild than surrender!"

24、康熙帝平定三藩

南明最后一个政权灭亡的那年，顺治帝已经病死，他的儿子玄烨（音 yè）即位，这就是清圣祖，也叫康熙帝。

康熙帝即位的时候，年纪才八岁。按照顺治帝的遗诏，由四个满族大臣帮助他处理国家大事，叫做辅政大臣。四个辅政大臣中，有个叫鳌拜（鳌音 áo），仗着自己掌握兵权，又欺负康熙帝年幼，独断专横。别的大臣和他意见不合，就遭到排挤打击。清王朝进关后，用强迫手段圈了农民大片土地，分给八旗贵族。鳌拜掌权以后，仗势扩大占地，还用差地强换别人的好地，遭到地方官的反对。鳌拜诬陷这些官员大逆不道，把反对他的三名地方官处死了。

康熙帝满十四岁的时候，亲自执政。这时候，另一个辅政大臣苏克萨哈和鳌拜发生争执，鳌拜怀恨在心，勾结同党诬告苏克萨哈犯了大罪，奏请康熙帝把苏克萨哈处死。康熙帝不肯批准，鳌拜在朝堂上跟康熙帝争了起来，后来竟指（音 zhuān）

24. Emperor Kangxi Subdues the Three Feudatories

The year the last regime of the Southern Ming fell, Emperor Shunzhi of Qing died and was succeeded by his son Xuanye as Emperor Shengzu of Qing, also known as Emperor Kangxi.

At his accession Kangxi was only eight. In accordance with Emperor Shundi's deathbed instructions, four Manchu ministers assisted him in the running of the state. Of the four minister-regents, Oboi dominated because of his control of the military and the young age of Emperor Kangxi. Ministers who crossed Oboi or did not share his views were sidelined or persecuted.

After the Qing's arrival in China proper, it appropriated vast farmland and distributed it among the nobility of the eight Manchu banners. At the height of his power, Oboi used the influence of his office to enlarge his land holdings and to exchange his poor holdings for better land owned by others. When local officials raised objections, Oboi had them executed on trumped-up charges of treason.

When Emperor Kangxi took over the reins of the state at the age of 14, another minister-regent Suksaha came into conflict with Oboi. Deeply offended, Oboi and his partisans falsely accused Suksaha of serious crimes and petitioned Emperor Kangxi for authorization to execute Suksaha. When the emperor balked, Oboi got into an argument with Emperor Kangxi in the audience hall, getting so worked up that he even rolled up his sleeves, bared his

起袖子，拔出拳头，大吵大嚷。康熙帝非常生气，但是一想鳌拜势力不小，只好暂时忍耐，由他把苏克萨哈杀了。

打那以后，康熙帝决心除掉鳌拜。他派人物色了一批十几岁的贵族子弟担任侍卫，这些少年个个长得健壮有力。康熙帝把他们留在身边，天天练摔跤。

鳌拜进宫去，常常看到这些少年吵吵嚷嚷在御花园里摔跤，只当是孩子们闹着玩，一点不在意。

有一天，鳌拜接到康熙帝命令，要他单独进宫商量国事。鳌拜像平常一样大模大样进宫去。刚跨进内宫的门槛，忽然一群少年拥了上来，困住了鳌拜，有的拧胳膊，有的拖大腿。鳌拜虽然是武将出身，力气也大，可是这些少年人多，又都是练过摔跤的，鳌拜敌不过他们，一下子就被打翻在地。任凭他大声叫喊，也没有人搭救他。

鳌拜被抓进大牢，康熙帝马上要大臣调查鳌拜的罪行。大臣们认为，鳌拜专横跋扈，擅杀无辜，罪行累累，应该处死。康熙帝从宽发落，把鳌拜的官爵革了。

knuckles and started to throw a tantrum. Emperor Kangxi deeply resented Oboi's outburst but saw no profit just yet in antagonizing the powerful Oboi; he checked his anger and acquiesced in Suksaha's execution by Oboi.

This incident reinforced the determination of Emperor Kangxi to be rid of Oboi. He recruited from among the nobility a group of strong young men in their teens as his bodyguards. They were assigned to the close protection of the emperor and trained daily in wrestling.

These noisy youngsters wrestling in the imperial garden did not bother Oboi, who thought they were merely playing.

One day Oboi was summoned to a private audience to discuss important matters of state with the emperor. He headed to the palace with his usual swagger and strut. No sooner had he cleared the threshold of the private quarters of the emperor than a group of young men rushed forward and massed around him. Some held his arms and some his legs. Although Oboi was a military man with great physical strength, the young men had numerical advantage and were trained wrestlers. Oboi was wrestled to the ground and no one came to his help despite his loud protestations.

Oboi was thrown in jail and Emperor Kangxi immediately ordered his ministers to begin a probe into Oboi's crimes. The ministers believed that Oboi deserved to die because of his despotic ways, his arbitrary killings and numerous other offenses. Emperor Kangxi showed leniency by stripping Oboi only of his rank and title.

The entire Qing court was delighted by the clever ousting of Oboi by Emperor Kangxi. Ministers who used to be arrogant and disdainful now had a foretaste of the young emperor's astuteness and learned to climb down from their high horses in his presence.

康熙帝用计除掉了鳌拜，朝廷上下都很高兴。一些原来比较骄横的大臣知道这个年轻皇帝的厉害，也不敢在他面前放肆。

康熙帝亲自执政后，大力整顿朝政，奖励生产，惩办贪污，使新建立的清王朝渐渐强盛起来。当时，南明政权虽然已经灭亡，但是南方有三个藩王却叫康熙帝十分担心。

这三个藩王本来是投降清朝的明军将领，一个是引清兵进关的吴三桂，一个叫尚可喜，一个叫耿仲明。因为他们帮助清朝消灭南明，镇压农民军，清王朝认为他们有功，封吴三桂为平西王，驻防云南、贵州，尚可喜为平南王，驻防广东，耿仲明为靖南王，驻防福建，合起来叫做“三藩”。

三藩之中，又数吴三桂最强。吴三桂当上藩王之后，十分骄横，不但掌握地方兵权，还控制财政，自派官吏，不把清朝廷放在眼里。

康熙帝知道要统一政令，三藩是很大的障碍，一定得找机会削弱他们的势力。正好尚可喜年老，想回辽东老家，上了一道奏章，要求让他儿子尚之信继承王位，留在广东。康熙帝批准尚可喜告老，但是不让他儿子接替平南王爵位。这一来，触

After assuming personal rule, Emperor Kangxi instituted government reforms, introduced incentives to stimulate production and cracked down on corruption. The recently founded Qing Dynasty grew in strength. While the Southern Ming regime had been quashed, the three feudatories in the south remained a thorn in Emperor Kangxi's side.

These feudatories were Ming generals who had sworn fealty to the Qing; they were Wu Sangui, who was instrumental in letting the Qing army into China proper, Shang Kexi and Geng Zhongming. In recognition of their contribution in helping the Qing to topple the Southern Ming and quelling peasant revolts, the Qing court pronounced Wu Sangui Prince Pingxi ("who pacified the west") and awarded him land in Yunnan and Guizhou, Shang Kexi as Prince Pingnan ("who pacified the south") with land given in Guangdong and Geng Zhongming as Prince Jingnan ("who cleaned up the south") with land in Fujian. Together they were called the "Three Feudatories."

Of the three, Wu Sangui was the strongest. After becoming a feudatory, Wu was more arrogant than ever. He now not only controlled the military but also oversaw finances. He had the authority to appoint his own officials and no longer toed the line of the Qing court.

Emperor Kangxi found the Three Feudatories to be a big obstacle to his effort to centralize command. He waited for the right moment to curtail their influence and power. By a happy coincidence Shang Kexi, who was getting on in years and desired to retire to his home town in Liaodong, petitioned Emperor Kangxi in this period for permission to allow his son Shang Zhixin to succeed him as prince in Guangdong. The emperor approved

动了吴三桂。耿精忠（耿仲明的孙子），他们想试探一下康熙帝的态度，假惺惺地主动提出撤除藩王爵位，回到北方的请求。

这些奏章送到朝廷，康熙帝召集朝臣商议。许多大臣认为吴三桂他们要求撤藩是假的，如果批准他们的请求，吴三桂一定会造反。

康熙帝果断地说：“吴三桂早有野心，撤藩，他要反，不撤，他迟早也要反。不如来个先发制人。”接着，就下诏答复吴三桂，同意他撤藩，诏令一下，吴三桂果然暴跳如雷，他自以为清朝开国老臣，现在年纪轻轻的皇帝居然撤他的权，就非反不可了。

公元1673年，吴三桂在云南起兵。为了笼络民心，他脱下清朝藩王的穿戴，换上明朝将军的盔甲，在水历帝的墓前假惺惺地痛哭一番，说是要替明王朝报仇雪恨。但是，人们都记得很清楚，把清兵请进中原来的是吴三桂，最后杀死水历帝的，还是吴三桂，现在他居然打起恢复明朝的旗号来，还能欺骗谁呢？

Shang Kexi's retirement but denied his son's succession as prince and his request to stay in Guangdong. The matter shocked Wu Sangui and Geng Jingzhong (Geng Zhongming's grandson). To test the reaction of Emperor Kangxi, they offered, without sincerity, to give up their title and rank of prince and return to the north.

When Emperor Kangxi received this information, he called a meeting of his ministers to discuss the matter. Many of them were of the opinion that the offer to give up feudatory status was disingenuous and if the request was approved, Wu Sangui was sure to mutiny.

Emperor Kangxi said with resolve, "Wu Sangui has long harbored ambitions. He will revolt if I strip him of his feudatory title. Yet he is sure to rebel sooner or later even if I don't. I think I should pre-empt him."

The emperor immediately issued an edict approving Wu Sangui's proposal to have his feudatory title and rank revoked. Wu Sangui flew into a rage at the response. He considered himself one of the founding fathers of the Qing Dynasty. He never expected the still very young emperor to dare to strip him of power. He was left with no choice but to rebel.

In 1673 Wu Sangui raised arms in Yunnan. In order to win the hearts and minds of the populace, he shed the official uniform of a Qing feudatory and donned the armor of a Ming general to weep with insincere tears before the tomb of Emperor Yongli of the Ming. He vowed to avenge the Ming. But the people still had a vivid memory of Wu Sangui's direct responsibility in opening the door to the Qing's invasion of China and the murder of

吴三桂在西南一带势力大，一开始，叛军打得很顺利，一直打到湖南。他又派人跟广东的尚之信和福建的耿精忠联系，约他们一起叛变。这两个藩王有吴三桂撑腰，也反了。历史上把这件事称做“三藩之乱”。

三藩一乱，整个南方都被叛军占领。康熙帝并没有被他们吓倒，一面调兵遣将，集中兵力讨伐吴三桂；一面停止撤销尚之信、耿精忠的藩王称号，把他们稳住。尚之信、耿精忠一看形势对吴三桂不利，又投降了。

吴三桂开始打了一些胜仗，后来清兵越来越多，越打越强，吴三桂的力量渐渐削弱，处境十分孤立。经过八年战争，他自己知道支撑不下去，连悔带恨，生了一场大病断了气。

公元1681年，清军分三路攻进云南昆明，吴三桂的孙子吴世璠自杀。清军最后平定了叛乱势力，统一了南方。

但是，正在朝廷庆祝平定叛乱胜利的时候，在我国东北边境又传来沙皇俄国侵犯边境的消息，这就使康熙帝不得不把注意力放到北方边境上面去。

Emperor Yongli. He could fool nobody with his call for the restoration of the Ming.

Wu Sangui had a strong presence in the southwest, so his rebellion made good headway in the beginning and soon reached Hunan. He got in touch with Shang Zhixin in Guangdong and Geng Jingzhong in Fujian, calling on them to join the rebellion. With Wu Sangui as champion, the other two feudatories also took the plunge. This is known to history as the "Rebellion of the Three Feudatories."

With the three feudatories in revolt, all of south China was now in rebel hands. Undeterred, Emperor Kangxi concentrated his attack on Wu Sangui while putting a stop to the revocation of the feudatory title and rank of Shang Zhixin and Geng Jingzhong to appease the latter two. Realizing the situation was not in Wu Sangui's favor, Shang Zhixin and Geng Jingzhong surrendered to the Qing court a second time.

Wu Sangui enjoyed initial successes in his rebellion but as the Qing army grew in troop strength and prowess, Wu Sangui's force became weaker and more isolated. Eight years into the rebellion, he knew he could no longer keep up the struggle. In frustration and regret, he fell seriously ill and soon died.

In 1681, the Qing army marched on Kunming along three routes. Wu Sangui's grandson Wu Shifan committed suicide. The Qing succeeded in quelling the rebellion and in unifying southern China.

But the celebrations of the victory against the southern rebellion at the Qing court were spoiled by news of the invasion of Tsarist Russia along the northeastern border of China. Emperor Kangxi's attention was forcibly wrenched from the south to the northern frontier.

25、雅克萨的胜利

沙皇俄国是怎样侵略我国东北的呢？原来在明朝末年，清朝正忙着进关，把北方边境的防备放松了。沙皇俄国趁机向我国黑龙江地区进犯。他们在我国掠夺财物，杀害人民，遭到我国各族居民的反抗。清朝进关后，派兵打击沙俄侵略军，收复了被俄国占领的黑龙江北岸的雅克萨（在今黑龙江呼玛西北，漠河以东的黑龙江北岸）。

当康熙帝为了平定三藩，把大批兵力调到西南去的时候，有个俄国逃犯带了八十四名匪徒窜到我国雅克萨，在那里筑起堡垒，四出抢掠。他们把抢来的貂皮献给沙皇。沙皇不但赦免了逃犯的罪，还派他当了雅克萨长官，想永远霸占我国土地。

康熙帝刚刚平定了三藩之乱，听到东北边境遭到侵犯，怎么不气愤？为了弄清敌情，他亲自到盛京，一面派将军彭春、郎

25. Victory at Yaksa (Albazin)

To understand the circumstances that allowed Tsarist incursions into China's northeast, one needs to go back to the the last years of the Ming, when the Qing was so engrossed in the southward march into China proper that it neglected its northern defense. This afforded Tsarist Russia an opening to make inroads into China in the Heilongjiang area, where it engaged in looting and killing, provoking the resistance of various local ethnic communities. After entering China proper, the Qing sent troops to attack the Tsarist invaders and succeeded in recovering Yaksa, which had fallen under Russian control, on the north bank of the Heilongjiang River (northwest of modern Huma and east of Mohe of Heilongjiang Province).

At the time when Emperor Kangxi deployed large numbers of troops to China's southeast to subdue the Three Feudatories, a Russian fugitive brought a gang of 84 desperados into China's Yaksa and started to build fortifications there, from which they made looting raids. The mink fur they grabbed from the local population was presented to the Tsar. In exchange, the Tsar not only pardoned the fugitive's offenses, but appointed him to the position of chief administrator of Yaksa, in an attempt to make Russian occupation permanent.

Emperor Kangxi, flush with the victory won against the Three Feudatories, was understandably very upset when he learned of the violation of the Qing's northeastern frontier. He traveled to Shengjing in order to assess first-hand the enemy inroads and

谈借打猎为名到边境侦察，一面要当地官员修造战船，建立城堡，准备征讨敌人。

康熙帝作好一切准备之后，派人送信给雅克萨的俄军头目，命令他趁早退出雅克萨。沙俄军不但不肯退出，反而向雅克萨增兵，跟清朝对抗。眼看和平解决已经不可能了，康熙帝就发布进军的命令。

公元1685年，康熙帝派彭春为都统，率领陆军水军一万五千人，浩浩荡荡开到雅克萨城下，把雅克萨围了起来。

沙俄军队经过几年的准备，把城堡修得十分牢固。彭春观察了地形之后，在城南筑起土山，让兵士站在土山上往城里放弩箭。城里的俄军以为清兵要在城南进攻，就把兵力拉到城南。哪儿知道清军却在城北隐蔽地方放了火炮，乘城北敌人防守空虚，突然轰起炮来。炮弹在城头呼啸着飞向城里，敌人的城楼被炮弹击中了，熊熊燃烧起来。

天色渐渐发白，清军又在城下堆起柴草，准备放火烧城。俄军头目这才吓慌了神，在城头上扯起白旗投降。

按照康熙帝的事前嘱咐，彭春把投降的俄军全部释放，勒

he sent his generals Pengchun and Langtan on reconnaissance missions along the border under the guise of a hunting expedition. In the meantime he instructed local officials to build battleships and fortresses in preparation for a punitive campaign.

When all preparations were in place, the Kangxi Emperor sent a letter to the Russian chief at Yaksa, ordering him to pull out of there as fast as he could. However, instead of pulling out, the Russian army sent reinforcements to Yaksa in a direct challenge to the Qing. Realizing the matter could not be resolved peacefully, Emperor Kangxi gave the order to march on Yaksa.

In 1685, a 15,000-strong force comprising land and naval troops under the command of Pengchun arrived at Yaksa and surrounded the settlement.

The fortress had been impressively fortified through years of work by Tsarist troops. After a survey of the terrain, Pengchun had an earthen platform built south of the town, from the top of which his soldiers rained arrows on the defenders. The Russian troops were led to believe the assault would come from the south side and concentrated the bulk of their force in the southern section of the town. Taking advantage of the momentary vacuum of defense in the northern section, Qing cannons previously hidden from view in the north began bombarding the town. Shells whizzed over the town, hitting its buildings and setting them on fire.

As the day progressed, the Qing troops placed piles of hay and firewood against the wall protecting the fort, getting ready to torch the town. This frightened the town leader into hoisting the white flag.

Acting on Emperor Kangxi's instructions, Pengchun freed all those Russian troops who had surrendered and ordered them to

令他们撤回本土。俄军头目托尔布津哭丧着脸，带着残兵败将走了。

俄军撤走后，彭春命令兵士把雅克萨城堡全部拆毁，让百姓耕种，接着，带着军队回到瑷珲城。

但是，遭到惨败的俄军头目并没有死心，他们打听到清军撤出的消息，过了不久，又带兵溜回雅克萨，把城堡修筑得更加坚固。

边境的警报传到了北京，康熙帝决定把侵略军彻底消灭。第二年夏天，黑龙江将军萨布素再一次进军雅克萨。清军将士想到从他们手里放走的敌人又来了，恨不得马上把他们消灭。这一次，清军的炮火更加猛烈，俄兵几次出城反扑，都被清军打了回去。守城头目托尔布津中弹死去，留下一批侵略军不得不躲到地窖里，但是没几天，病的病，死的死，最后只剩下了一百五十个人。

沙俄政府慌忙派使者赶到北京，要求谈判。康熙帝才下令停止攻城。

公元1689年，中国政府派出代表索额图，沙俄政府也派出戈洛文做代表，在尼布楚举行和谈，划分了两国边界，肯定了黑龙江和乌苏里江流域的广大地区都是中国领土。这就是《尼布楚条约》。

return to Russia. Tolbuzin, the dejected Russian commander, departed with his remaining troops.

After the departure of the Russian troops, Pengchun ordered his soldiers to dismantle the fortress at Yaksa and returned the land to farming by the local inhabitants. He then led his troops back to Aigun.

But the badly defeated Russian commander did not learn his lesson. As soon as he realized that the Qing troops had pulled out of Yaksa, he returned with his troops and rebuilt the fort, making it stronger.

When news of the retaking of Yaksa by the Russians reached Beijing, Emperor Kangxi set out to destroy the invading Russian troops. In the summer of the following year, a second campaign was launched against Yaksa under the command of General Sabsu of Heilongjiang. The Qing troops couldn't wait to destroy these enemy troops who had repaid the leniency previously shown them by reinvading. This time around the Qing troops redoubled their fire power and beat back repeated Russian sorties out of the fort. The Russian commander Tolbuzin was killed by a bullet and his remaining troops barricaded themselves in the cellars. After a few days many of them fell ill or died, leaving 150 who survived.

Only when the Tsarist government dispatched an envoy to Beijing with an urgent request for negotiations did Emperor Kangxi call a halt to the operation.

In 1689, negotiations were held at Nerchinsk with Songgotu representing the Chinese government and Golovin present on behalf of Tsarist Russia. The resulting Treaty of Nerchinsk delineated the boundary between the two countries and recognized vast areas of the Heilongjiang (Amur) River and Ussuri River basins as Chinese territory.

26、三征噶尔丹

沙俄政府在雅克萨失败以后，并不甘心，就在尼布楚条约签订的第二年，又唆使准噶尔部（蒙古族的一支）的首领噶尔丹进攻漠北蒙古。

那时候，蒙古族分为漠南蒙古、漠北蒙古和漠西蒙古三个部分。除了漠南蒙古早已归属清朝外，其他两部也都臣服了清朝。准葛尔是漠西蒙古的一支，本来在伊犁一带过游牧生活。自从噶尔丹统治准噶尔部以后，他野心勃勃，先兼并了漠西蒙古的其他部落，又向东进攻漠北蒙古。漠北蒙古抵抗一阵失败了，几十万的漠北蒙古人逃到漠南，请求清朝政府保护。康熙帝派使者到噶尔丹那里，叫他把侵占的地方还给漠北蒙古。噶尔丹自以为有沙俄撑腰，十分骄横，不但不肯退兵，还以追击漠北蒙古为名，大举进犯漠南。

康熙帝召集大臣宣布决定亲征噶尔丹。他认为噶尔丹气势汹

26. Three Expeditions against Galdan

The Tsarist government did not take their defeat at Yaksa with a good grace. The year following the signing of the Treaty of Nerchinsk, it prompted Galdan, chief of the Dzungars (a Mongol tribe), to attack the Mobei Mongols north of the Gobi.

In that period, the Mongols were divided into the Mo Nan (south of the Gobi), the Mo Bei (north of the Gobi) and the Mo Xi (west of the Gobi) Mongols. Besides the Mo Nan Mongols, who had submitted to the Qing much earlier, the other two groups also recognized the authority of Qing. The Dzungars were a branch of the Mo Xi (western) Mongols, who lead a nomadic life in the Ili area. When the ambitious Galdan became chief of the Dzungars, he first forcibly integrated the other Mo Xi Mogol tribes before moving east to attack the Mo Bei (northern) Mongols. After their resistance crumbled, hundreds of thousands of Mo Bei Mongols fled south across the Gobi to seek the protection of the Qing. Emperor Kangxi sent an envoy to Galdan to demand the return of the land he had taken from the Mo Bei Mongols. Galdan, emboldened by Tsarist Russian support, not only refused to withdraw his troops but marched south across the Gobi with a large force purportedly to pursue the Mo Bei Mongols.

Emperor Kangxi summoned his ministers to announce his decision to personally lead a punitive expedition against Galdan, whose arrogance, ambition and cross-border action, he believed,

汹，野心不小，既然打进来，非反击不可。公元1690年，康熙帝分兵两路：左路由抚远大将军福全率领，出古北口；右路由安北大将军常宁率领，出喜峰口，康熙帝亲自带兵在后面指挥。

右路清军先接触噶尔丹军，打了败仗。噶尔丹长驱直入，一直打到离开北京只有七百里的乌兰布通（今内蒙古赤峰克什克腾旗）。噶尔丹得意扬扬，还派使者向清军要求交出他们的仇人。

康熙帝命令福全反击。噶尔丹把几万骑兵集中在大红山下，后面有树林掩护，前面又有河流阻挡。他把上万只骆驼，缚住四脚躺在地上，驼背上加上箱子，用湿毡毯裹住，摆成长长的一个驼城。叛军就在那箱垛中间躲箭放枪，阻止清军进攻。

清军用火炮火枪对准驼城的一段集中轰击，炮声隆隆，响得震天动地。驼城被打开了缺口。清军的步兵骑兵一起冲杀过去，福全又派兵绕出山后夹击，把叛军杀得七零八落，纷纷丢了营寨逃走。

噶尔丹一看形势不利，赶快派个喇嘛到清营求和。福全一

must be firmly resisted. In 1690, Emperor Kangxi led a force split into two armies: the left army under the command of the Fuyuan General Fuquan was to march out of Gubeikou Pass, and the right army under Anbei General Changning was to march out of Xifengkou Pass. The emperor directed the campaign from the rear.

The right army of the Qing was the first to engage Galdan's troops and was defeated. Galdan's force was able to drive unopposed into Ulan-Butung (modern Hexigten Banner in Chifeng of Inner Mongolia), which was only seven hundred li from Beijing. The smug Galdan sent an envoy to the Qing army to demand the surrender of his enemies.

The Kangxi Emperor ordered a counteroffensive by Fuquan. Galdan gathered his tens of thousands of cavalymen at the foot of Mount Dahong, taking advantage of the natural cover provided by the woods behind them and river in front of them. Ten thousand camels were made to lie on the ground with their legs bound together and boxes wrapped in wet felt blankets tied to their backs to form a long wall of camels. The rebels took cover behind these boxes in lieu of battlements and shot arrows through the gaps to stop the Qing assaults.

The Qing troops concentrated their cannon and gun fire on one section of the camel wall. Amid the thundering, earth-shaking attack, a breach was made in the camel barrier and the Qing infantrymen and cavalry charged toward the breach. Fuquan sent troops to outflank the rebel position and charge at the enemy from behind the mountain. With its front and rear under simultaneous attack, the rebel force was defeated and forced to flee and abandon their camp.

Sensing that the balance had tipped against him, Galdan was

面停止追击，一面派人向康熙帝请示。康熙帝下令说：“快进军追击！别中了贼人的诡计。”果然，噶尔丹求和只是缓兵之计，等清军奉命追击的时候，噶尔丹已经带了残兵逃到漠北去了。

噶尔丹回到漠北，表面上向清朝政府表示屈服，暗地里重新招兵买马。公元1694年，康熙帝约噶尔丹会见，订立盟约。噶尔丹不但不来，还暗地派人到漠南煽动叛乱。他扬言他们已经向沙俄政府借到鸟枪兵六万，将大举进攻。内蒙古各部亲王纷纷向康熙帝告发。

公元1696年，康熙帝第二次亲征，分三路出击：黑龙江将军萨布素从东路进兵；大将军费扬古率陕西、甘肃的兵，从西路出兵，截击噶尔丹的后路；康熙帝亲自带中路军，从独石口出发。三路大军约定时期夹攻。

康熙帝的中路军到了科图，遇到了敌军前锋，但东西两路还没有到达，这时候，有人传说沙俄将要出兵帮助噶尔丹。随行的一些大臣就有点害怕起来，劝康熙帝班师回北京。康熙帝气愤地说：“我这次出征，没有见到叛贼就退兵，怎么向天下人交代，再

quick to send a lama to the Qing camp to appeal for peace. Calling a halt to his pursuit of the Galdan force, Fuquan sought instructions from Emperor Kangxi, who issued the order: "Resume the pursuit without delay! Don't fall for the rascal's ruse!" He was proved right: Galdan's peace overture was a ploy to buy time. By the time the Qing army resumed its pursuit, Galdan had made it north across the Gobi with his remaining troops.

After returning to his haunt north of the Gobi, Galdan continued to rebuild his force quietly while outwardly submitting to the authority of the Qing. In 1694, Emperor Kangxi invited Galdan to meet with him with a view to signing a pact. Not only did Galdan refuse to attend the meeting but he also sent his people south across the Gobi to instigate a revolt. He claimed to have borrowed sixty thousand musketeers from the Tsarist government and was ready to launch a massive attack. Emperor Kangxi received numerous denunciations of Galdan from Mongol princes in Inner Mongolia.

In 1696, Emperor Kangxi undertook another campaign, the second upon which he embarked in person, with the Heilongjiang General Sabsu commanding the east army, the General-in-chief Fiyanggu commanding the west army composed of troops from Shaanxi and Gansu to cut off Galdan's retreat and the center army led by Emperor Kangxi setting out from Dushikou. The three armies were to launch a simultaneous attack at a predetermined time.

As the center army led by Emperor Kangxi reached Ketu, it ran into the vanguard of the enemy force. The east and the west armies had not yet arrived and there was talk of Tsarist Russia planning to send troops to help Galdan. Some ministers in the emperor's entourage became nervous and urged Emperor Kangxi

说，我中路一退，叛军全力对付西路，西路不是危险了吗？”

当下，康熙帝决定继续进兵克鲁伦河，并且派使者去见噶尔丹，告诉他康熙帝亲征的消息。噶尔丹在山头一望，见到康熙帝黄旗飘扬，军容整齐，连夜拔营撤退。

康熙帝一面派兵追击，一面赶快通知西路军大将费扬古，要他们在半路上截击。

噶尔丹带兵奔走了五天五夜，到了昭莫多（在今蒙古人民共和国乌兰巴托东南）正好遇到费扬古军。昭莫多原是一座大树林，前面有一个开阔地带，历来是漠北的战场。费扬古按照康熙帝的部署，在小山的树林茂密地方设下埋伏，先派先锋四百人诱战，边战边退，把叛军引到预先埋伏的地方，清军先下马步战，听到号角声起，就一跃上马，占据了山顶。叛军向山顶进攻，清军从山顶放箭发枪，展开了一场激战。费扬古又派出

to take the troops back to Beijing.

"How would I explain it to the nation if I withdrew my expeditionary force before laying eyes on the rebel leader?" The emperor retorted angrily. "Besides, if I withdrew the center army, the rebel army would concentrate its attack on the west army and the west army would be in danger."

So Emperor Kangxi decided to continue the march toward the Kerulen River and sent an emissary to tell Galdan that Emperor Kangxi had embarked on the expedition in person. When Galdan saw from a hilltop the yellow standards of Emperor Kangxi fluttering in the breeze and the disciplined arrays of Qing troops, he decamped that very night.

Emperor Kangxi kept in pursuit of Galdan and sent instructions to the east army general, Fiyanggu, to intercept Galdan's troops.

After marching for five days and nights with his troops, Galdan reached Jao Modo (southeast of present-day Ulan Bator of the People's Republic of Mongolia), where he encountered Fiyanggu's army. Jao Modo was, at that time, a massive forest with an adjacent large open space that was a scene of many battles north of the Gobi. Following the plans of Emperor Kangxi, Fiyanggu placed ambushers in densely forested areas in the hills and sent out a vanguard of four hundred men to draw the enemy out. As the vanguard drew back in battle towards the ambush, the rebel troops followed; the Qing troops then dismounted to fight as foot soldiers. At the sound of bugles, the Qing soldiers leapt onto their horses and galloped up the hill to take the hilltop. As the rebel troops began an assault in the direction of the hilltop, the Qing army fired guns and shot arrows from the top. A fierce

一支人马在山下袭击叛军辎重，前后夹击。叛军死的死，降的降。最后，噶尔丹只带了几十名骑兵脱逃。

经过两次大战，噶尔丹叛乱集团土崩瓦解，康熙帝要噶尔丹投降，但是噶尔丹继续顽抗。隔了一年，康熙帝又带兵渡过黄河亲征。这时候，噶尔丹原来的根据地伊犁已经被他侄儿策妄阿那布坦占领，他的左右亲信听说清军来到，也纷纷投降，愿意做清军的向导。噶尔丹走投无路，就服毒自杀。

打那以后，清政府重新控制了阿尔泰山以东的漠北蒙古，给当地蒙古贵族各种封号和官职。清政府又在乌里雅苏台设立将军，统辖漠北蒙古。

后来，噶尔丹的侄儿策妄阿那布坦攻占西藏。公元1720年，康熙帝又派兵远征西藏，驱逐了策妄阿那布坦，护送达赖喇嘛六世进藏。以后，清政府又在拉萨设置驻藏大臣，代表中央政府同达赖、班禅共同管理西藏。

battle unfolded. Fiyanggu sent a detachment to attack the supply vehicles of the rebels at the foot of the hills. The rebels, attacked from above and below, died or surrendered in large numbers. Galdan escaped with only dozens of cavalrymen.

After the two major battles, the Galdan insurgency collapsed. Emperor Kangxi called on Galdan to surrender but he kept up his stubborn resistance. A year later Emperor Kangxi mounted another punitive expedition across the Yellow River. By this time, Galdan's base of operations in Ili had been wrested from him by his nephew Tsewang Araptan. Many of his close associates surrendered and volunteered to be the Qing army's guides. Having nowhere to turn, Galdan committed suicide by ingesting poison.

From that time on, the Qing government regained control of the Mobei (northern) Mongols east of the Altai Mountains and began awarding official titles and ranks to members of the Mongol nobility. The Qing government also established a generalship in Uliastai to govern the Mobei Mongols.

Some time later Galdan's nephew, Tsewang Araptan, launched an attack into Tibet. In 1720, Emperor Kangxi dispatched an expeditionary force to Tibet to drive out Tsewang Araptan and escort the Sixth Dalai Lama back into Tibet. The Qing government later appointed a resident minister to Tibet to co-manage Tibet affairs with the Panchen and Dalai Lamas on behalf of the central government.

27、文字狱

清朝统治者对明朝留下来的文人，一面采取招抚办法，一面对不服统治的，采取了严厉的镇压手段。就在康熙帝即位的第二年，有官员告发，浙江湖州有个文人庄廷鑑(音lóng)，私自召集文人编辑《明史》，里面有攻击清朝统治者的语句，还使用南明的年号。这时候，庄廷鑑已死去，朝廷下令，把庄廷鑑开棺戮尸，他的儿子和写序言的、卖书的、刻字的、印刷的以及当地官吏，被处死的处死，充军的充军。这个案件，一共株连到七十多人。

公元1711年，又有人告发，在翰林官戴名世的文集里，对南明政权表示同情态度，又用了南明的永历帝的年号，康熙帝就下令把戴名世打进大牢，判了死刑。这个案件牵连到他的亲友和刻印他文集的，又有三百多人。

因为这些案件完全是由写文章引起的，就管它叫“文字狱”。

27. Literary Inquisition

The Qing ruling elite's carrot-and-stick policy toward the Ming literati consisted of co-option coupled with severe suppression of those who refused to submit to Manchu rule. In the second year of the reign of Emperor Kangxi, Zhuang Tinglong, a man of letters in Huzhou, Zhejiang was reported by some officials for organizing a group of scholars without authorization to write a history of the Ming containing anti-Qing wording and references to era names of the Ming. As Zhuang Tinglong had already died at the time of his denunciation, the Qing court ordered his body exhumed so that he could be "executed" posthumously. Zhuang Tinglong's sons, along with those who had written the preface to the book, those who had sold the book, those who had worked on the wooden blocks, and the printers of the book as well as local officials were all executed or exiled to garrison duty. More than seventy people were implicated and punished in the case.

In 1711, Dai Mingshi, an official at the Hanlin Academy, was accused of casting the Ming in a sympathetic light in his anthology and of referring to the era name of Emperor Yongli of the Southern Ming. He was thrown in jail and sentenced to death. This case implicated more than three hundred people, including family and friends as well as those taking part in the production of the anthology.

Since these cases of literary inquisition arose entirely from writing, they were called "wen zi yu" or "imprisonment caused by writing."

康熙帝做了六十一年皇帝，老死了。他的第四个儿子胤禛（音 yin zhen）即位，这就是清世宗，又叫雍正帝。雍正帝是一个残暴成性、猜忌心又很重的人。在他的统治下，文字狱也更多更严重。最出名的是吕留良事件。

吕留良也是一个著名学者。明朝灭亡以后，他参加反清斗争没有成功，就在家收学生教书。有人推荐他应博学鸿词科，他坚决拒绝了。官员劝他不听，威胁他也没用，后来他索性跑到寺院里，剃光了头当和尚。官员们也拿他没办法。

吕留良当了和尚之后，躲在寺院里著书立说。书里面有反对清朝统治的内容。幸好书写成了，没有流传开去，吕留良死了，更没被人注意。

有个湖南人曾静，偶然见到吕留良的文章，对吕留良的学问十分敬佩，就派了个学生张熙，从湖南跑到吕留良的老家浙江去打听他遗留下来的文稿。

张熙一到浙江，不但打听到文稿的下落，还找到吕留良的两个学生。张熙跟他们一谈，很合得来。他向曾静汇报后，曾静也约两人见了面，四个人议论起清朝统治，都十分愤慨。大家就秘密商量，怎么想办法推翻清王朝。

Emperor Kangxi died at a ripe old age, after sixty one years of power. His fourth son, Yinzhen, succeeded him as Emperor Shizong of Qing, also known as Emperor Yongzheng. He turned out to be a cruel, paranoid ruler. Under his rule, cases of literary inquisition grew in number and severity of punishment. One of the most prominent cases involved Lü Liuliang.

Lü Liuliang was another renowned scholar, who had turned to teaching students at home after unsuccessful attempts to make a mark in the anti-Qing cause. He was recommended for the "special examination for broad learning and extensive words" but categorically refused. Officials tried the carrot and the big stick, but he remained unmoved. Lü finally shaved his head and became a monk; the government gave up on him.

After becoming a monk, Lü Liuliang spent his time writing in the temple. Anti-Qing sentiment found its way into his books. Fortunately, the books he wrote were not widely circulated and after his death they were forgotten.

Zeng Jing, a native of Hunan, one day stumbled upon a piece written by Lü Liuliang and was greatly impressed by his erudition. He asked a student named Zhang Xi to travel from Hunan to Lü's home town in Zhejiang to look for more of his manuscripts.

Zhang Xi not only found more of Lü's manuscripts in Zhejiang, but also met two of his students. They had an agreeable conversation. After being briefed on Zhang Xi's trip upon his return to Hunan, Zeng Jing arranged a meeting with the two students of Lü, where the four voiced their anger at Qing rule. They began to explore behind closed doors ways to overthrow the Qing.

他们懂得，光靠几个读书人办不了大事。后来，曾静打听到担任陕甘总督的汉族大臣岳钟琪，掌握很大兵权，因为讨伐边境叛乱的时候立了战功，受到雍正帝重用。他想，要是能劝说岳钟琪反清，成功就大有希望。

曾静写了一封信，派张熙去找岳钟琪。岳钟琪接见张熙，拆看来信，见是劝说他反清的，大吃一惊，问张熙说：“你是哪里来的，胆敢送这样大逆不道的信。”

张熙面不改色说：“将军跟清人是世仇，您难道不想报仇？”

岳钟琪说：“这话从哪儿说起？”

张熙说：“将军姓岳，是南宋岳忠武王（就是岳飞）的后代，现在清朝皇帝的祖先是金人。岳王当年被金人勾结秦桧害死，千古称冤。现在将军手里有的是人马，正是替岳王报仇的好机会呢。”

岳钟琪听了，马上翻了脸，吆喝一声，把张熙打进牢监，并且要当地官吏审问张熙，追查他是什么人指使的。

张熙受尽种种酷刑，就是不招，说：“你们要杀要剐都可以，要问指使人，没有！”

They realized that not much could be accomplished by members of the educated class alone. Zeng Jing had heard about the governor of Shaanxi and Gansu named Yue Zhongqi, who was of Han extraction and had at his command a significant number of troops. His service was valued by Emperor Yongzheng because of his battle victories that had quashed rebellions along the frontier. Zeng Jing believed if Yue could be persuaded to champion the anti-Qing cause, the odds for success would be greatly increased.

Zeng Jing sent Zhang Xi with a letter to Yue Zhongqi. When Yue read the letter and found it was an invitation to join the anti-Qing cause, he gave a start.

"Who sent you?" He demanded of Zhang Xi. "How dare you deliver such a monstrous letter?"

Without losing his self-possession, Zhang Xi replied, "You have a family feud with the Qing. Don't you want to avenge your family?"

"Explain yourself!" Yue Zhongqi again demanded.

"Your name is Yue," replied Zhang Xi. "You are a descendant of General Yue Fei of the Southern Song and the ancestors of the Qing royalty were Jin people. General Yue was killed as a result of collusion between the Jin (Jurchens) and Qin Hui. Everyone knows that he was framed. With the troops you command, you are in a perfect position to avenge General Yue Fei."

At this, Yue Zhongqi's face writhed in anger; he barked out an order and Zhang Xi was thrown in jail. Yue instructed the local officials to question Zhang Xi to find out who put him up to this.

Zhang Xi refused to confess despite being subjected to various forms of torture.

岳钟琪心想，这个张熙是个硬汉，光使硬的治不了他，就另想一个软的办法。第二天，他把张熙从牢里放出来，秘密接见了。岳钟琪假惺惺说：昨天的审问，不过是试探，他听了张熙的话，十分感动，决心起兵反清，希望张熙帮他出主意。

张熙开始不相信，禁不住岳钟琪装得郑重其事，还真的赌神罚咒，才相信了他。两人商谈了几天，渐渐热络起来。张熙无话不谈，把他老师曾静怎样交代的话都抖了出来。

岳钟琪哄得了张熙提供的情况，一面派人到湖南捉拿曾静，一面立刻写了一份奏章，把曾静、张熙怎样图谋造反的情节，一五一十报告了雍正帝。

雍正帝接到报告，又气又急，立刻下令把曾静、张熙解送到北京，严刑审问。这时候，张熙才知道上了岳钟琪的大当，要不招也不中用了。雍正帝再一查，知道曾静还跟吕留良的两个学生有来往。

这样，案子就牵连到吕留良家。吕留良已经死了，雍正把吕留良的坟刨了，棺材劈了，还不解恨，又把吕留良的后代和

"You can kill me," he said. "but my answer will still be: no one put me up to this."

Yue Zhongqi concluded that the tough approach wouldn't work on a strong man like Zhang Xi, so he switched to a gentler tactic. The following day he had Zhang released from jail and received him in a private meeting. Yue said with duplicity that the questioning the day before had merely been a test and that he was moved by what was said by Zhang; thus he had decided to raise arms against the Qíng but needed advice from him.

Zhang was initially unconvinced but, by putting on a serious air and invoking heaven and earth as witnesses of his sincerity, Yue finally removed his doubts. After several days of conversation, the two became closer. Zhang, his tongue loosened by the newfound friendship, disclosed details of the instructions given by his teacher Zeng Jing.

Acting on the information thus coaxed out of Zhang Xi, Yue sent his men to Hunan to arrest Zeng Jing and in the meantime wrote a report to Emperor Yongzheng giving a detailed account of the subversive plot being hatched by Zeng Jing and Zhang Xi.

On reading the report, Emperor Yongzheng was furious. He immediately ordered Zeng Jing and Zhang Xi brought to Beijing, where they were questioned under torture. Zhang Xi realized he had been royally duped by Yue Zhongqi and it was useless to recant now. Further probing by the court revealed that Zeng Jing had had contact with two students of Lǚ Liuliang.

The case now implicated Lǚ Liuliang's family. As Lǚ Liuliang was no longer alive, Emperor Yongzheng had his tomb razed and his coffin smashed. For good measure, he ordered the execution of Lǚ Liuliang's offspring and all members of

他的两个学生满门抄斩，还有不少相信吕留良的读书人也受到株连，被罚到边远地区充军。

像这样的案子还是真由反对朝廷的活动引起的。另外有不少文字狱，完全是牵强附会，挑剔文字过错，甚至为了一句诗，一个字也惹出大祸。有一次，翰林官徐骏在奏章里，把“陛下”的“陛”字错写成“狴”（音bì）字，雍正帝见了，马上把徐骏革职。后来再派人一查，在徐骏的诗集里找出了两句诗：“清风不识字，何事乱翻书？”挑剔说这“清风”就是指清朝，这一来，徐骏犯了诽谤朝廷的罪，把性命也送掉了。

the families of his two students. A large number of intellectuals who believed in Lü Liuliang were implicated and exiled to garrison duty in remote frontier regions.

This was a case involving proven anti-Qing activities. Many other cases were much more far-fetched, some based on strained, hair-splitting interpretations of purportedly seditious words and phrases. A single line of verse, even a single word, could invoke disastrous consequences. Once, an official of the Hanlin Academy named Xu Jun wrote “**羆**” (a legendary beast painted on prison doors) for “**陛**” (His Majesty) by a slip of pen in a memorandum to the emperor. He was immediately sacked by Emperor Yongzheng for this unintentional mistake. In a follow-up investigation, inspectors came upon two lines of verse in an anthology of Xu Jun's poems:

“The breeze (qing feng) does not read.

Why does it randomly turn the pages?”

The investigators insisted that the word “qing” in “qing feng” (breeze) was an allusion to the Qing court. The unintentional offense of defamation of the imperial court proved to be Xu Jun's death sentence.

28、乾隆帝禁书修书

清王朝统一中国后，经过康熙、雍正两朝的经营，经济有了很大发展。到雍正帝儿子清高宗弘历（也叫乾隆帝）在位的时候，国力强盛，财政富裕。清朝初期的文治武功（也就是文化和武力的统治），在这个时期都达到鼎盛的程度。

公元1757年，原来已归服清朝廷的准噶尔贵族阿睦尔撒纳发动叛乱。乾隆帝派兵两路，进攻伊犁，平定了叛乱。准噶尔平定以后，原来被准噶尔俘虏的维吾尔族首领大和卓木（又名布那敦）、小和卓木（又名霍集占）兄弟逃回新疆天山南路，起兵反清。乾隆帝又派兵征讨。大小和卓木在当地残酷压迫人民，遭到维吾尔族人民的痛恨，民众纷纷起来支持清军。清军顺利地平定了大小和卓木的叛乱。公元1762年，清朝在新疆设置伊犁将军，加强对天山南北的管理。

乾隆帝跟他祖父、父亲一样，除了武功之外，还十分重视文治。他一面继续开博学鸿词科，招收文人学者，编写各种书

28. Emperor Qianlong's Book Bans and Anthology Creation

After the Qing unified China, it made great economic strides under Emperor Kangxi and Emperor Yongzheng. During the reign of Emperor Qianlong (also known as Hongli and Emperor Gaozong of Qing, son of Emperor Yongzheng), China's power and prosperity grew to an impressive level, and its cultural achievements and military prowess reached an all-time high in this early period of the Qing.

In 1757, Amursana, the Dzunglar aristocrat who had submitted to the Qing, started a revolt. A force sent by the Qianlong Emperor to Ili succeeded in suppressing this revolt. The Uigur brothers Burhan Al-Din and Khwaja-i Jahan held hostage by the Dzunglars escaped back to the Tianshan Mountains in Xinjiang and started a revolt there against the Qing. Emperor Qianlong sent a punitive expedition against them. The two brothers ruthlessly oppressed the people there and were hated by the Uigurs, who rose up in support of the Qing army. The revolt was soon inhibited. In 1762, the Qing government established the post of Ili General in Xinjiang for more effective control of the territory north and south of the Tianshan Mountain range.

Like his grandfather and father, Emperor Qianlong did not neglect cultural development even as he busied himself with military campaigns. He continued to hold "special examinations for broad learning and extensive words" to recruit literati and

籍，一面又大兴文字狱，镇压有反清嫌疑的文人。乾隆时期文字狱之多，大大超过了康熙、雍正两朝。

但是，乾隆帝懂得，光靠文字狱来实行文化统治是不彻底的。还有成千上万的书籍，贮藏在民间。如果里面有不利他们统治的内容，该用什么办法来解决呢？

他终于想出一个办法，就是集中全国的藏书，来编辑一部规模空前巨大的丛书。这样做一来可以进一步笼络大批知识分子，显示皇帝重视文化；二来借这个机会把民间藏书统统审查一下。可说是一举两得。

公元1773年，乾隆帝正式下令开设四库全书馆。派了一些皇室亲王和大学士担任总裁，那些皇帝国戚大多是挂个名，起监督作用的。真正担任编纂官的都是当时一些有名的学者，像戴震、姚鼐（音 nài）、纪昀（音 yún）等人。那套丛书名称就叫做《四库全书》。

我国古代常把图书分成经、史、子、集四个大类；经部，包括历来儒家的经典著作（像《诗经》、《论语》、《孟子》等）和研究文字音韵的书；史部，包括各种历史、地理、传记等书；子

scholars in the compilation of a variety of books. At the same time, he relentlessly carried out literary inquisitions to persecute scholars suspected of anti-Qing sentiment. On his watch, the number of cases of literary inquisition far exceeded that in the reigns of Emperors Kangxi and Yongzheng.

But Emperor Qianlong was aware that literary inquisitions alone would not assure cultural control by the government. Tens of thousands of books remained in private collections. He sought a way for the government to purge them of content considered inimical to its rule.

He finally came up with an idea: he would try to pool all the books in private collections into a library to form the basis of a voluminous anthology on a scale never attempted before. This would at once endear the government to a large number of intellectuals by demonstrating that the emperor gave high priority to culture, and afford an opportunity to subject all the private holdings to review and censorship. He would be killing two birds with one stone.

In 1773, Emperor Qianlong ordered the establishment of the "Complete Library of the Four Treasuries". Members of the royal house, princes and grand academics were appointed as directors. These royal and aristocratic officers largely played an honorary, supervisory role. The editors who did the nitty-gritty work were renowned contemporary scholars, including Dai Zhen, Yao Nai and Ji Yun among others.

Since ancient times, China's books were divided into four general categories: *jing*, or classics, which included Confucian classics (e.g. *The Book of Songs*, *The Analects of Confucius* and *The Book of Mencius*) and books on linguistics such as studies

部，包括古代诸子百家学说和科技著作，像农学、医学、天文、历法、算法、艺术等；集部，包括文学的总集和专集等。按照四大类集中贮藏起来就叫做“四库”。

要编一套规模巨大的丛书，先得把书籍收集起来。乾隆帝下了命令，叫各省官员搜集、收购各种图书上缴，并且定出了奖励办法，要私人进献图书，进献越多，奖励越大。这道命令一下，各地图书果然源源不绝送到北京，只隔二年，就有二万多种，再加上宫廷内部原来的大量图书，数量就很可观了。

书收集起来了，乾隆帝就下令四库全书馆的编纂官员对图书认真检查。凡是有“违碍”（对清统治者不利）字句的，一概销毁。一查下来，发现在明朝后期的大臣奏章里，提到清皇族的上代，不那么尊重，譬如他们的上代就接受过明朝的官职和封号，这在乾隆帝看来是很不体面的，于是就下令把这类图书一概烧毁。至于像吕留良、黄道周等抗清文人的著作，那就更不用说了。后来再一查，在宋朝人的著作中，也有许多反对辽、

of rhymes and sounds; *shi*, or history, which included books about history, geography and biographies; *zi*, or miscellaneous philosophy, which included ancient schools of thought and books on science and technology, such as agriculture, medicine, astronomy, calendric systems, arithmetic and art; and *ji*, or literary compositions, which included literary anthologies and monographs. A library collecting works from all four categories was called the *Si Ku*, or *Four Treasuries Encyclopedia*.

In order to compile such a massive anthology, the first step was to assemble all the books. Emperor Qianlong ordered all provincial governments to search for and acquire all kinds of books, which they would send on to the central government. Incentives were offered for donations of books from private collections, with rewards proportional to the size of the donations. Soon books began to pour in from across the country, reaching twenty thousand volumes in two years. With the large existing imperial holdings they formed an impressive library.

Once the books were assembled in Beijing, Emperor Qianlong ordered the editors to go through them with a fine-toothed comb. Any book found to contain subversive writing was to be destroyed outright. The review found letters and reports presented by ministers in the late Ming period, containing references to the Qing royal house's preceding generations that were less than respectful. The documents mentioned, for example, the fact that members of the older generation of the Qing royal clan received Ming offices and titles. This, in Qianlong's eyes, did not exactly echo the glory of his lineage, so he ordered such publications burned too. The writings of avowed anti-Qing scholars like Lú Liuliang and Huang Daozhou suffered, needless to say, the same

金、元朝的内容，这种内容很容易使人联想到反对清王朝，也该销毁，或者销毁一部分。还有一个办法，就是发现这类字句，就随时删改涂抹，这样，书虽然被保存下来，但是已经弄得面目全非。为了这件事，乾隆帝可说是绞尽脑汁。据不完全统计，在编《四库全书》的同时，被查禁烧毁的图书也有三千种之多。

但是不管乾隆帝的动机怎样，这部规模巨大的《四库全书》到底编出来了，而且保存下来了。编纂《四库全书》的学者们对大批图书进行编辑、校勘、抄写，足足花了十年工夫，到公元1782年正式完成，共收图书三千五百零三种，七万九千三百三十七卷。当时把全书抄了七部，分别贮藏在皇宫、圆明园、热河行宫（今河北承德）、奉天（今沈阳）、杭州、镇江、扬州（其中三部后来在战争中被烧毁了）。这对后代人研究我国古代丰富的文化遗产，毕竟是一项重大的贡献。至于查禁销毁一批书，当然对我国文化造成了损失，但是这种查禁也不可能彻底。当时就有不少爱护文物的人，冒着坐牢杀头的危险，把许多有价值的书藏了起来。到了清朝末年，就有不少被禁的书陆续出现了。

fate. As the review went on, it was found that even books by authors of the Song Dynasty contained critical remarks about the Liao, the Jin and the Yuan dynasties, which could easily be construed as hostile to the Qing and therefore deserved to be destroyed either completely or partially. An alternative was to expunge or alter such references. Thus, some of these books would survive, but beyond recognition. Emperor Qianlong really struggled to accomplish the anthology compilation. According to some statistics, nearly three thousand works were banned or burned in the process of compiling the *Four Treasuries*.

Regardless of Emperor Qianlong's motivation in undertaking this cultural project, the massive "Four Treasuries" anthology was finally completed and has been preserved to this day. The anthology's editor-scholars spent ten years editing, proofreading and transcribing the texts. Upon its completion in 1782, the anthology comprised 3,503 works in 79,337 volumes. Seven copies were produced at that time and placed respectively in the imperial palace, the Yuanmingyuan (Summer Palace), the Traveling Palace in Jehol (modern Chengde of Hebei Province), Fengtian (modern Shenyang), Hangzhou, Zhenjiang and Yangzhou. (Three copies were eventually destroyed by fire during war time.) This was a significant contribution to future scholarship on China's rich cultural heritage, even though the books banned and burned in the process of the creation of this collection represented a loss to China's culture. The ban was, by its nature, not exhaustive; many culture aficionados hid books of great value from the inquisitors, risking prison and worse. These prohibited books resurfaced in the late period of the Qing.

29、曹雪芹写《红楼梦》

乾隆帝连年用兵，军费花费很大，他又六次巡游江南，搞得十分铺张浪费。加上下面的官吏贪污浪费成风，弄得国家渐渐地衰弱下来。

就在这个时期，在京城流传着一本小说，叫《红楼梦》。开始，人们还弄不清作者是谁，后来经过研究，才知道写书的作者叫曹雪芹。

曹雪芹原来是一个贵族家庭的子弟。他的曾祖曹玺（音xǐ）曾经得到康熙帝的宠信，被派到南方当江宁织造。江宁是南方富裕的地方，织造是专替皇族办服装的，是个攒钱的差使。曹玺死后，曹雪芹的祖父曹寅，父亲曹頫（音fū）接替了这个差使，一家三代前后做了六七十年织造官，不用说家产越来越富，成了一个豪门。

雍正帝即位后，因为皇室内部的纠纷，牵连到曹家，雍正帝认为曹家反对过他，不但革了曹頫的职，还下令查抄了他们

29. Cao Xueqin Writes *A Dream of Red Mansions*

The ballooning defense spending in the years of military campaigning under Emperor Qianlong, the lavish expenses incurred during his six tours through the provinces south of the Yangtze and a culture of corruption and extravagance among public officials all contributed to the Qing's decline.

It was in this period that a novel entitled *A Dream of Red Mansions* became popular reading in the imperial capital. Initially, the authorship was unclear but after some research it was determined that it was penned by a man named Cao Xueqin.

Cao Xueqin was born to an aristocratic family. His great grandfather Cao Xi was a confidant of Emperor Kangxi and was dispatched to Jiangning to serve as "zhi zao" or Superintendent of Imperial Silk Manufacturing. Jiangning was then a prosperous southern city and the office of "zhi zao"—overseeing silk manufacture for the imperial household, was a lucrative post. After Cao Xi's death, Cao Xueqin's grandfather Cao Yin, followed by his father Cao Fu, inherited the position. Needless to say, after occupying the post of "zhi zao" for three generations spanning six to seven decades, the family had amassed impressive wealth.

After the accession of Emperor Yongzheng, fallout from the infighting in the royal house hit the Cao family. Emperor Yongzheng held a grudge against the Cao family for not taking his side in the quarrel. He not only removed Cao Fu from his post

的家。那时候，曹雪芹是个十岁的孩子，已经懂事，看到家庭遭到这样大的灾难，幼小的心灵受到很大打击。

父亲丢了官，在江宁呆不下去，只好回到北京老家，生活越来越穷，家庭的灾难又接二连三发生。到后来，父亲曹頔也死了。曹雪芹的生活更加困难，他只好搬到北京西郊，在几间简陋的屋子里读书。有时候，连粮食也不够吃，只好喝点薄粥充饥。

曹雪芹住在郊外，环境变了，接触了一些穷苦百姓，再想起小时候家里的豪华生活，免不了产生许多感触。后来，他决心根据他的亲身体会写出一部反映当时社会生活的小说，这就是《红楼梦》。

曹雪芹在《红楼梦》里，写了一个贵族大家庭贾家从兴盛到衰落的故事。在那个贵族家庭里，大多是一些挥霍享受，专讲吃喝玩乐，放债收租的寄生虫。有些人表面上道貌岸然，内心肮脏刻薄。小说的主人公，贾家的公子贾宝玉和他的表妹林黛玉是一对厌恶贵族习气，反对封建礼教的青年。在那个环境里，他们想摆脱旧礼教的束缚，也没有出路。结果林黛玉受尽

but ordered all assets of the Cao family confiscated. The catastrophe descending on his family was a traumatic experience for the ten-year-old Cao Xueqin, already sensitive to what was going on around him.

After his father lost his job, the family could no longer afford to stay in Jiangning. They moved back to their native Beijing and to an increasingly impoverished life. The family seemed dogged by misfortunes. Life became more difficult for Cao Xueqin after his father's death. He had to move to the western outskirts of Beijing where he continued his studies in spartan quarters. When food ran low, he was reduced to surviving on thin gruel.

In his new environment in the outskirts of the city, Cao Xueqin came into contact with impoverished laypeople. The contrast between their lives and the highlife he had enjoyed in his childhood set him thinking a lot. He later decided to write a novel based on his experiences to mirror contemporary life. *A Dream of Red Mansions* was the result.

A Dream of Red Mansions chronicles the events revolving around the aristocratic Jia family as it moves from its heyday to its decline. There is no shortage of parasites inside that aristocratic household who feed their extravagant habits and carnal pleasures with money from charging usurious interest rates and collecting rent. Some hide a filthy mind and mean spirit behind a sanctimonious facade. The main protagonists, Jia Baoyu, the son of the Jia family, and his cousin Lin Daiyu, are two young people who are disgusted by the aristocratic way of life and resist the tyranny of feudal conventions. In the environment in which they find themselves, their attempt at breaking free from the conformist mold is doomed to failure. As a result, Lin Daiyu

歧视，害病死去，贾宝玉离家出走，而那个贵族大家庭，在享尽荣华富贵之后，也像腐朽的大厦一样，忽喇喇地倒坍了。

曹雪芹用十分深切同情的笔调写了这一对青年男女和一些受压迫凌辱的婢女，又满怀气愤揭露了封建统治阶级的腐朽和罪恶。在《红楼梦》里，有一段“护官符”的故事，就是专门揭露这些官僚和豪门怎样勾结起来欺压百姓的。

小说里的贾府有一门亲戚薛家。薛家的公子薛蟠，因为跟别人争夺一个婢女，行凶打死了人。被害人的仆人告到应天府，知府贾雨村正想派公差到薛家去捉拿凶犯，他的随身仆人暗示他别这样做。退堂以后，贾雨村把仆人留下，问他为什么阻止他捉拿凶犯。那仆人从袋里拿出一张纸，上面抄着民间流传很广的一首叫做《护官符》的歌谣：

“贾不假，白玉为堂金作马。

阿房宫，三百里，住不下金陵一个史。

东海缺少白玉床，龙王来请金陵王。

丰年好大‘雪’，珍珠如土金如铁。”

贾雨村看不懂。经仆人一解说，才知道南京地方，有四家豪门大族：贾家是皇亲国戚，史家和王家都是金陵（就是南京）

suffers social condemnation and falls mortally ill, Jia Baoyu runs away from home. A great aristocratic family with a glorious past thus collapses like a decayed mansion.

Cao Xueqin draws with a sympathetic pen a vivid portrait of this young pair and of oppressed and abused maid servants. The book is an angry indictment of the decadence and vices of the feudal ruling elite. In *A Dream of Red Mansions*, there is an episode which exposes how bureaucrats and rich and powerful families work hand in hand to fleece the common folk.

The Jia family and the Xue family are related. The young master of the Xue family, Xue Pan, kills someone in a fight over a maid servant. The servant of the victim's family files a complaint with the governor of Yingtian. When the governor Jia Yucun is on the point of sending his men to the Xue residence to arrest the suspect, his attendant stops him with a wink. After the hearing is over, he asks the attendant to stay behind and queries why he has stopped him from going after the murder suspect. The attendant produces a piece of paper on which is transcribed a popular ballad, which runs as follows:

"Jia (the Jia family) is not jia (a myth); they have halls of white jade and horses of gold.

Epang Palace, three hundred *li* in extent, is not big enough to house the Shi of Jinling.

Even Longwang, the King of the Dragons, comes to the Wang of Jinling, when the eastern sea needs a white jade bed.

A bumper year is presaged by plentiful 'Xue' (snow); to them pearls and gems are like dirt, and gold is like iron."

The attendant explains to the mystified Jia Yucun that in Nanjing there are four prominent families: the Jia family is related

的大官僚，“雪”和“薛”同音，指当地一家富商薛家。这四家结成亲戚，互相勾结，势力大得没法说。当官的要想护住自己的官职，就不能得罪这四家豪门。仆人提醒贾雨村说，这次杀人的凶犯正是薛家公子，要是触犯了他们，不但要丢掉官职，只怕性命难保。

贾雨村听了仆人的话，吓了一跳，马上打消了捉拿凶犯的念头，还按照仆人献的计，把被打死的人说成是急病死去。一桩人命案，就这样稀里糊涂地了结。

曹雪芹花了十年时间，在北京西郊写这部小说，辛劳和疾病把他折磨得十分衰弱。当他写完八十回的时候，他的一个心爱的孩子得病夭折。曹雪芹受不了这个打击，终于放下了他没有完成的著作，离开了人世。

曹雪芹死后，他的小说稿本经过朋友们传抄，渐渐流传开

to the royal house; the Shi and the Wang families are high officials in Jinling (modern Nanjing); "Xue" (homophone of *xue* or snow) refers to the Xue family—rich local merchants. The four families are intricately linked by marriage and together wield unparalleled power. Any official who is interested in keeping his job should be careful not to get on the wrong side of the big four. The attendant reminds Jia Yucun that the murder suspect is none other than the young master of the Xue family. If he antagonizes the Xue family, not only will he lose his job but likely will lose his head too.

Jia Yucun gives a start at the attendant's words and immediately abandons the idea of arresting the suspect. He takes the attendant's advice and announces that the murder victim has actually died of a sudden illness. A murder case is thus summarily disposed of.

Cao Xueqin spent ten years writing the novel in the western outskirts of Beijing and became very frail as a result of a hard life, hard work and failing health. When he finished the eightieth chapter, one of his favourite children died of illness. Shortly after this traumatic loss, Cao Xueqin himself left the world before finishing his novel.

After the death of Cao Xueqin, his manuscripts, copied by

来。许多人读了这本小说，又是赞赏，又是感动。但是对这样杰出的著作没有全部完成，总觉得是一件太可惜的事。后来，又有一个文学家高鹗（音 è），续写了四十回，使《红楼梦》成了一部结构完整的小说。

小说《红楼梦》经过一再传抄、翻印，越传越广。一直到现代，大家公认它是我国古代最杰出的长篇小说。人们不但欣赏它高超的艺术成就，而且还从那里了解到我国封建社会快要没落的历史和社会状况。直到现在，从国内到世界各国，都有许多学者研究、考证这部伟大著作，人们把这门学问称做“红学”。

friends, gradually spread to a wider audience. People were delighted and moved by the novel but lamented the fact that such a masterpiece remained an unfinished work. It was not until later that a man of letters, named Gao E, completed *A Dream of Red Mansions* with his 40-chapter sequel.

The circulation of the novel *A Dream of Red Mansions* grew as manual reproductions proliferated. Its appeal has endured to this day and it has been acclaimed the most outstanding novel in ancient China; prized not only for its superb artistic achievement but for its revelations about the historical and social circumstances immediately preceding the decline of China's feudal order. To this day, many Chinese and international scholars are still studying and conducting evidential research on this great literary work. This discipline is known as "Red ology".

30、大贪官和珅

乾隆帝做了六十年皇帝，在文治武功方面，取得了胜利。他志得意得，骄傲起来，把自己称做“十全老人”。他越来越喜欢听颂扬的话，于是，就有人用讨好奉承的手段取得他的宠信，掌握了大权。

有一次，乾隆帝准备出外巡视，叫侍从官员准备仪仗。官员一下子找不到仪仗用的黄盖。急得不知怎么才好。乾隆帝十分恼火，问：“这是谁干的好事？”

官员们听到皇帝责问，吓得张口结舌。有一个青年校尉在旁从容不迫地说：“管事的人不能推卸责任。”

乾隆帝侧过脸一看，那个校尉眉目清秀，态度镇静，乾隆帝心里高兴，把追问黄盖的事也忘了，问他叫什么名字。那青年校尉回答，名叫和珅（音shēn）。乾隆帝又问他的家庭情况，读过哪些书，和珅也无不对答如流。

30. He Shen, Corrupt Mandarin with an Insatiable Greed

Emperor Qianlong's 60-year reign was marked by brilliant military and cultural achievements. He became smug and took to calling himself "shi quan lao ren" (literally, ten-perfect old person) or, to borrow from modern popular culture vernacular, a venerable elder with "a perfect ten." With an increasingly inflated ego, he grew fond of flattery. This gave an opening to people who ingratiated themselves with the emperor to gain control over the levers of power.

Before one of Emperor Qianlong's tours, he instructed his aides to ready the royal procession, but these harried officials were unable to quickly locate the yellow canopies required for the procession. Emperor Qianlong lost his temper and demanded to know who was responsible for this glitch.

The officials were scared speechless by the royal reproach. A young commandant was heard to say with calm self-assurance "Those in charge should be held accountable."

Emperor Qianlong turned his glance in the direction of the speaker and found him to be handsome, with delicate features, and self-assured. Pleased by the young commandant's words, Emperor Qianlong asked for his name; the matter of the yellow canopies now completely forgotten. The young commandant gave the name of He Shen and answered with ease all subsequent questions about his family and the books he had studied.

乾隆帝十分赞赏和珅，马上宣布他总管仪仗，以后又派他当御前侍卫。和珅是个非常伶俐的人，乾隆帝要什么，他件件都办得十分称心，乾隆帝爱听好话，和珅就尽说顺耳的。日子一久，乾隆帝把和珅当作亲信，和珅也步步高升。不出十年，从一个侍卫提升到了大学士。后来，乾隆帝还把他女儿和孝公主嫁给和珅的儿子。和珅跟皇帝攀上了亲家，那权势更别提有多大了。再加上乾隆帝年老力衰，朝政大事，就自然落在和珅手里。

和珅掌了大权，别的大事他没心思管，却一味搜刮财富。他不但接受贿赂，而且公开勒索，不但暗中贪污，而且明里掠夺。地方官员献给皇帝的贡品，都要经过和珅的手。和珅先挑最精致希罕的留给自己，挑剩下来再送到宫里去，好在乾隆帝不查问，别人也不敢告发，他的贪心就越来越大了。

有一回，有个大臣叫孙士毅，从南方回到北京，准备朝见乾隆帝，正巧在官门口遇到了和珅。和珅一见孙士毅手里拿着一只盒子，就问：“你手里是什么东西？”

孙士毅说：“没什么，是一只鼻烟壶。”

Emperor Qianlong was so impressed by He Shen that he put him in charge of royal processions and pageants on the spot. He later appointed him Palace Guardsman. He Shen had a nimble mind and was able to cater to Qianlong's every need: knowing the emperor's eagerness to hear praise, He Shen never said anything that would grate on the royal ears. In time, He Shen became a confidant to the Emperor and enjoyed a meteoric rise to power. In less than ten years he rose from guardsman to Grand Academic. Later, Emperor Qianlong gave his daughter, Princess Hexiao, in marriage to He Shen's son. With this new alliance through marriage with royalty, He Shen's power grew to new heights. Given Emperor Qianlong's frail health and advanced years, the running of state naturally fell to He Shen.

He Shen used his enormous power chiefly to amass private wealth through crooked means and not to advance the interests of the nation and society. Not only did he accept bribes, he openly extorted money. Not only did he steal from the state covertly, he plundered overtly. All tributes by local government officials to the emperor passed through He Shen's hands. The finest and rarest treasures were kept by He Shen and the rest would be sent on to the imperial palace. Luckily for him, Emperor Qianlong never checked, and no one dared to report the irregularities. Thus, He Shen's greed grew.

Once, a minister named Sun Shiyi was on his way to see Emperor Qianlong after returning from a trip to the south when he ran into He Shen at the entrance to the palace. Gesturing toward a box held in Sun's hand, He Shen asked, "What have you got there?"

"It's just a snuff bottle," replied Sun Shiyi.

和珅走上前去，不客气地把盒子抓在手里，打开一看，那只鼻烟壶竟是用一颗大珠子雕刻出来的。和珅拿在手时，看了又看，嘴里连声啧啧称赞，涎（音xián）皮赖脸地说：“好宝贝！就送给我，怎么样？”

孙士毅慌忙说：“哎，不行了。这件宝贝是准备献给皇上的，昨天已经奏明皇上了。”

和珅脸色一沉，把珠壶往孙士毅手里一塞，冷笑着说：“我不过跟你开个玩笑，何必那样寒酸相！”

孙士毅把那只珠壶献给了乾隆帝。过了几天，他又跟和珅碰在一起，只见和珅得意扬扬地说：“我昨天也弄到一件宝贝，您看看，能不能跟您上次进贡的那只比？”

孙士毅走过去一看，原来就是他献给乾隆帝的那只珠壶。孙士毅嘴里随口应付了几句，心里想，这件宝贝怎么落到和珅手里，一定是乾隆帝赏给他了。后来，他偷偷打听，才知道和珅是买通太监从宫里偷出来的。

和珅利用他的地位权力，千方百计搜刮财富，一些朝臣和

He Shen walked up and unceremoniously grabbed the box from Sun. When he opened the box, a snuff bottle carved out of a big precious stone greeted his eyes. He Shen took it out of the box and couldn't take his eyes off it as he clucked his tongue in wonder.

"What a fine specimen! Why don't you give it to me?" He asked with an ingratiating smile.

"Oh, that's impossible," Sun Shiyi said quickly. "I promised this to the emperor yesterday."

He Shen's face darkened as he shoved the bottle into Sun's hands and said with a snort, "I was only kidding. You are such a cheapskate."

Sun Shiyi presented the precious snuff bottle to Emperor Qianlong. A few days later when he saw He Shen again, the latter said gloatingly, "I got hold of a rare gem yesterday. Take a look at it! How does it stack up against the one you gave to the emperor?"

When Sun Shiyi moved closer to have a look, he found it to be the very same snuff bottle he had presented to the emperor a few days before. Sun Shiyi mumbled some vague response, wondering how it ended up in He Shen's possession. Emperor Qianlong must have given it to him as some kind of reward, he speculated. After some discreet inquiries he learned that the snuff bottle had been smuggled out of the palace by a eunuch who had been bribed by He Shen.

He Shen used his office and power to the full to rake in personal wealth. Officials of the court and local governments, knowing his likes and dislikes, left no stone unturned to find rare treasures and jewelry to buy He Shen's good will. With high

地方官员，知道他的脾气，就尽量搜刮珍贵的珠宝去讨好和珅。大官压小吏，小吏又向百姓层层压榨，百姓的日子自然越来越难过了。

乾隆帝在做满六十年皇帝后，传位给了太子颙琰（音 yóng yǎn），颙琰即位，就是清仁宗，又叫嘉庆帝。

嘉庆帝早知道和珅贪脏枉法的情况。过了三年，乾隆帝一死，嘉庆帝马上把和珅逮捕起来，叫他自杀，并且派官员查抄和珅的家产。

和珅的豪富，本来是出了名的，但是抄家的结果，还是让大家大吃一惊。长长的一张抄家清单里，记载着金银财宝、綾罗绸缎、希奇古董，多得数都数不清。粗粗估算一下，大约值白银八亿两之多，抵得上朝廷十年的收入。后来听说，那查抄出来

officials extorting from lower-ranking officials and low-ranking bureaucrats extorting from the laypeople, it became harder for the people to make ends meet.

After sixty years of reign, Emperor Qianlong ceded the throne to the crown prince Yongyan, who acceded to the throne as Emperor Renzong of Qing, also known as Emperor Jiaqing.

Emperor Jiaqing had long been aware of He Shen's bribe-taking and unlawful acts. When Emperor Qianlong died three years later, Emperor Jiaqing immediately had He Shen arrested and ordered him to commit suicide. All his assets were confiscated by the government.

He Shen's fabulous wealth was common knowledge, but when his assets were inventoried for confiscation, the public was still astonished by what was revealed. The long list recorded incredible amounts of gold, silver, jewelry, fine silks and brocade, rare curios and antiques. By rough estimates they were valued at eight hundred million taels of silver—equivalent to ten years of state revenue.

的大批财宝，都让嘉庆帝派人运到宫里去了。于是，民间就有人编了两句顺口溜讽刺说：“和珅跌倒，嘉庆吃饱。”

嘉庆帝死后，他的儿子旻宁（旻音mín）即位，就是清宣宗，也叫道光帝。道光帝即位后，清王朝越来越衰落，西方资本主义国家乘机加紧侵略，民族危机越来越严重。到了公元1840年，也就是道光帝即位的第二十年，爆发了鸦片战争。打这以后，中国从封建社会一步步变为半殖民地半封建社会，英勇的中国人民为了反对帝国主义侵略，反对封建统治，前仆后继，开展了不屈不挠、艰苦卓绝的斗争。中国历史进入了一个新的时期——近代史时期。

Those confiscated assets were reportedly transported into the imperial palace. This prompted the cynical doggerel:

‘He Shen has fallen, but Emperor Jiaqing gets to eat his fill.’
Paraphrased: ‘He Shen’s loss is Emperor Jiaqing’s gain.’

At his death, Emperor Jiaqing was succeeded by his son, Mianqing, as Emperor Xuanzong of Qing, also known as Emperor Daoguang. He presided over the decline of the Qing Dynasty, as Western imperialist powers stepped up their invasion of China and the nation entered a period of deepening crisis. In 1840, the twentieth year of Emperor Daoguang’s reign, the Opium War broke out. The event marked the beginning of a gradual transformation of China from a feudal into a semi-colonial, semi-feudal society. As its people fought valiantly and tenaciously against imperialist invasions and feudal rule, China entered its modern history.

15500 cny

Copyright © 2009 Shanghai Press and Publishing Development Company

All rights reserved. Unauthorized reproduction, in any manner, is prohibited.

This book is edited and designed by the Editorial Committee of *Cultural China* series

Managing Directors: Wang Youbu, Xu Naiqing

Editorial Director: Wu Ying

Editor (Chinese): Zhou Kexi

Editor (English): Jennifer Wilde

Chinese Text by Lin Handa and Cao Yuzhang

Translation by Yawtsong Lee

Interior and Cover Design: Yuan Yinchung, Xia Wei

ISBN: 978-1-60220-920-6

Address any comments about *Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History (VI)* to:

Better Link Press

99 Park Ave

New York, NY 10016

USA

or

Shanghai Press and Publishing Development Company

F 7 Donghu Road, Shanghai, China (200031)

Email: comments_betterlinkpress@hotmail.com

Computer typeset by Yuan Yinchang Design Studio, Shanghai

Printed in China by Shanghai Donnelley Printing Co. Ltd.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10